

语法复习一：句子成分；简单句、并列句和复合句

一、句子成分

(一) 句子成分的定义：构成句子的各个部分叫做句子成分。句子成分有主要成分和次要成分；主要成分有主语和谓语；次要成分有表语、宾语、定语、状语、补足语和同位语。

(二) 主语：主语是一个句子所叙述的主体，一般位于句首。但在 **there be** 结构、疑问句（当主语不疑问词时）和倒装句中，主语位于谓语、助动词或情态动词后面。主语可由名词、代词、数词、不定式、动名词、名词化的形容词和主语从句等表示。例如：

During the 1990s, American country music has become more and more popular. (名词)

We often speak English in class. (代词)

One-third of the students in this class are girls. (数词)

To swim in the river is a great pleasure. (不定式)

Smoking does harm to the health. (动名词)

The rich should help the poor. (名词化的形容词)

When we are going to have an English test has not been decided. (主语从句)

It is necessary to master a foreign language. (it作形式主语，真正的主语为后面的不定式)

(三) 谓语：谓语说明主语所做的动作或具有的特征和状态。动词在句中作谓语，一般放在主语之后。谓语的构成如下：

1、简单谓语：由一个动词或动词短语构成。如：He practices running every morning.

2、复合谓语：(1) 由情态动词或其他助动词加动词原形构成。如：You may keep the book for two weeks. He has caught a bad cold. (2) 由系动词加表语构成。如：We are students.

(四) 表语：表语用以说明主语的身份、特征和状态，它一般位于系动词（如 be, become, get, look, grow, turn, seem 等）之后。表语一般由名词、代词、形容词、分词、数词、不定式、动名词、介词短语、副词及表语从句表示。例如：

Our teacher of English is an American. (名词)

Is it yours? (代词)

The weather has turned cold. (形容词)

The speech is exciting. (分词)

Three times seven is twenty one? (数词)

His job is to teach English. (不定式)

His hobby (爱好) is playing football. (动名词)

The machine must be out of order. (介词短语)

Time is up. The class is over. (副词)

The truth is that he has never been abroad. (表语从句)

(五) 宾语：宾语表示动作的对象或承受者，一般位于及物动词和介词后面。例如：

They went to see an exhibition (展览) yesterday. (名词)

The heavy rain prevented me from coming to school on time. (代词)

How many dictionaries do you have? I have five. (数词)

They helped the old with their housework yesterday. (名词化形容词)

He pretended not to see me. (不定式短语)

I enjoy listening to popular music. (动名词短语)

I think (that) he is fit for his office. (宾语从句)

宾语种类: (1) 双宾语 (间接宾语+直接宾语), 例如: Lend me your dictionary, please. (2) 复合宾语 (宾语+宾补), 例如: They elected him their monitor.

(六) 宾语补足语: 英语中有些及物动词, 除有一个直接宾语以外, 还要有一个宾语补语, 才能使句子的意义完整。带有宾语补足语的一般句型为: 某些及物动词 (如 make 等+宾语+宾补)。宾补可由名词、形容词、副词、不定式、分词、介词短语和从句充当。例如:

His father named him Dongming. (名词)

They painted their boat white. (形容词)

Let the fresh air in. (副词)

You mustn't force him to lend his money to you. (不定式短语)

We saw her entering the room. (现在分词)

We found everything in the lab in good order. (介词短语)

We will soon make our city what your city is now. (从句)

(七) 定语: 修饰名词或代词的词、短语或从句称为定语。定语可由以下等成分表示:

Guilin is a beautiful city. (形容词)

China is a developing country; America is a developed country. (分词)

There are thirty women teachers in our school. (名词)

His rapid progress in English made us surprised. (代词)

Our monitor is always the first to enter the classroom. (不定式短语)

The teaching plan for next term has been worked out. (动名词)

He is reading an article about how to learn English. (介词短语)

(八) 状语: 修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子, 说明动作或状态特征的句子成分, 叫做状语。可由以下形式表示:

Light travels most quickly. (副词及副词性词组)

He has lived in the city for ten years. (介词短语)

He is proud to have passed the national college entrance examination. (不定式短语)

He is in the room making a model plane. (分词短语)

Wait a minute. (名词)

Once you begin, you must continue. (状语从句)

状语种类如下:

How about meeting again at six? (时间状语)

Last night she didn't go to the dance party because of the rain. (原因状语)

I shall go there if it doesn't rain. (条件状语)

Mr Smith lives on the third floor. (地点状语)

She put the eggs into the basket with great care. (方式状语)

She came in with a dictionary in her hand. (伴随状语)

In order to catch up with the others, I must work harder. (目的状语)

He was so tired that he fell asleep immediately. (结果状语)

She works very hard though she is old. (让步状语)

I am taller than he is. (比较状语)

练习一

一、指出下列句子划线部分是什么句子成分：

1. The students got on the school bus.
2. He handed me the newspaper.
3. I shall answer your question after class.
4. What a beautiful Chinese painting!
5. They went hunting together early in the morning.
6. His job is to train swimmers.
7. He took many photos of the palaces in Beijing.
8. There is going to be an American film tonight.
9. He is to leave for Shanghai tomorrow.
10. His wish is to become a scientist.
11. He managed to finish the work in time.
12. Tom came to ask me for advice.
13. He found it important to master English.
14. Do you have anything else to say?
15. To be honest; your pronunciation is not so good.
16. Would you please tell me your address?
17. He sat there, reading a newspaper.
18. It is our duty to keep our classroom clean and tidy.
19. He noticed a man enter the room.
20. The apples tasted sweet.

二、用符号划出下列短文各句中的主语（—）、谓语（=）、宾语（～）：

I hope you are very well. I'm fine, but tired. Right now it is the summer vacation and I'm helping my Dad on the farm. August is the hottest month here. It is the time of year for the rice harvest, so every day I work from dawn until dark. Sometimes we go on working after dark by the lights of our tractors. We grow rice in the south of the States, but in the north where it is colder they grow wheat. We have a lot of machines on the farm. Although the farm is large, my Dad has only two men working for him. But he employs more men for the harvest. My brother takes care of the vegetable garden. It doesn't often rain in the summer here. As a result, we have to water the vegetable garden. Every evening we pump water from a well. It then runs along channels to different parts of the garden.

三、用符号划出下列短文各句中的定语（—）、状语（=）、补语（～）：

Most Saturday evenings there is a party, even at harvest time. These parties often make us very happy. We cook meat on an open fire outside. It's great! Americans eat a lot of meat — too much in my opinion. Some of my friends drink beer. I don't, because I have to drive home after the party. In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States. There are five different time areas in the States. In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time. How many different time areas do you

have in China? Well, I must stop and get some sleep. Please give my best regards to your parents.

四、选择填空：

- () 1. ____ will leave for Beijing.
A. Now there the man B. The man here now
C. The man who is here now D. The man is here now
- () 2. The weather ____.
A. wet and cold B. is wet and cold C. not wet and cold D. were wet and cold
- () 3. The apple tasted ____.
A. sweets B. sweetly C. nicely D. sweet
- () 4. He got up ____ yesterday morning.
A. lately B. late C. latest D. latter
- () 5. The actor _____ at the age of 70.
A. dead B. died C. dyed D. deaded
- () 6. ____ were all very tired, but none of ____ would stop to take a rest.
A. We, us B. Us, we C. We, our D. We, we
- () 7. He found the street much _____.
A. crowd B. crowding C. crowded D. crowdedly
- () 8. I think _____ necessary to learn English well.
A. its B. it C. that D. that is
- () 9. The dog ____ mad.
A. looks B. is looked C. is being looked D. was looked
- () 10. I will never forget the day _____ I joined the army.
A. that B. when C. in which D. where

二、简单句、并列句和复合句

(一) 句子种类两种分类法

1、按句子的用途可分四种:

- 1) 陈述句 (肯定、否定): He is six years old; She didn't hear of you before.
- 2) 疑问句 (一般、特殊、选择、反意): Do they like skating? How old is he? Is he six or seven years old? Mary can swim, can't she?
- 3) 祈使句: Be careful, boys; Don't talk in class
- 4) 感叹句: How clever the boy is!

2、按句子的结构可分三种:

- 1) 简单句: 只有一个主语 (或并列主语) 和一个谓语 (或并列谓语).
e.g. He often reads English in the morning.
Tom and Mike are American boys.
She likes drawing and often draws pictures for the wall newspapers.
- 2) 并列句: 由并列连词 (and, but, or 等) 或分号 (;) 把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起构成。
e.g. You help him and he helps you.
The future is bright; the road is tortuous. 前途是光明的, 道路是曲折的.
- 3) 复合句: 含有一个或一个以上从句的句子。复合句包含: 名词性从句 (主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句)、定语从句和状语从句等。

e.g. The foreign visitors took a lot of pictures when they were at the Great Wall.

(二) 简单句的五种基本句型

- 1、主语+系动词+表语: e.g. He is a student.
- 2、主语+不及物动词: e.g. We work.
- 3、主语+及物动词+宾语: e.g. Henry bought a dictionary.
- 4、主语+及物动词+双宾语 (间接宾语+直接宾语): e.g. My father bought me a car.
- 5、主语+及物动词+复合宾语 (宾语+宾补): e.g. Tom made the baby laugh.

注: 其他各种句子都可由这一种基本句型扩展、变化或省略而构成。

(三) 并列句的分类

- 1、表示连接两个同等概念, 常用 and, not only...but also..., neither...nor..., then 等连接。e.g. The teacher's name is Smith, and the student's name is John.
- 2、表示选择, 常用的连词有 or, either...or..., otherwise 等。e.g. Hurry up, or you'll miss the train.
- 3、表示转折, 常用的连词有 but, still, however, yet, while, when 等。e.g. He was a little man with thick glasses, but he had a strange way of making his classes lively and interesting.
- 4、表示因果关系, 常用的连词有 so, for, therefore 等。e.g. August is the time of the year for rive harvest, so every day I work from dawn until dark.

(四) 高考考点探讨

- 1、简单句的五大句型是最基本的句型。虽然近几年单纯考查这种基础句型的题不多, 但是在阅读中有时需借助于划分句子成分去理解, 在书面表达中, 没有最基本的遣词造句的能力是不可能用地道的英语句子来表达清楚的。
- 2、祈使句、反意疑问句和感叹句是高考命题的热点之一。有时把祈使句与反意疑问句结合于一体来考查。一个题目, 几个考点, 是近几年命题的发展趋势。
- 3、高考对简单句、并列句和各种复合句的考查常表现在对连词的选择和使用上。如: and, but,

or, while, 以及其它连接名词性从句、定语从句和状语从句的连接词、关联词。

4、各种主从复合句的考查常常与动词的时态联系在一起,以宾语从句与状语从句最为明显,时间从句与条件从句中,如果主句是将来时,从句则用一般式表将来,这一点在高考中经常考查。如: We will go outing if it doesn't rain tomorrow。

练习二、简单句、并列句和复合句

一、判断下列句子是简单句、并列句还是复合句:

1. We often study Chinese history on Friday afternoon.
2. The boy who offered me his seat is called Tom.
3. There is a chair in this room, isn't there?
4. My brother and I go to school at half past seven in the morning and come back home at seven in the evening.
5. He is in Class One and I am in Class Two.
6. He was fond of drawing when he was yet a child.
7. Neither has he changed his mind, nor will he do so.
8. What he said at the meeting is very important, isn't it?
9. The farmer is showing the boy how to plant a tree.
10. Both Tom and Jack enjoy country music.

二、判断下列短文中各句是简单句、并列句还是复合句:

I hope you are very well (). I'm fine, but tired (). Right now it is the summer vacation and I'm helping my Dad on the farm (). August is the hottest month here (). It is the time of year for the rice harvest, so every day I work from dawn until dark. (). Sometimes we go on working after dark by the lights of our tractors (). We grow rice in the south of the States, but in the north where it is colder they grow wheat (). We have a lot of machines on the farm (). Although the farm is large, my Dad has only two men working for him (). But he employs more men for the harvest (). My brother takes care of the vegetable garden (). It doesn't often rain in the summer here (). As a result, we have to water the vegetable garden (). Every evening we pump water from a well (). It then runs along channels to different parts of the garden ().

Most Saturday evenings there is a party, even at harvest time (). These parties often make us very happy (). We cook meat on an open fire outside (). It's great () ! Americans eat a lot of meat — too much in my opinion (). Some of my friends drink beer (). I don't, because I have to drive home after the party (). In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States (). There are five different time areas in the States (). In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time (). How many different time areas do you have in China () ? Well, I must stop and get some sleep (). Please give my best regards to your parents ().

三、选择填空:

1. Give me one more minute ____ I'll be able to finish it.
A. and B. or C. if D. so
2. It's the third time that John has been late, ____?

- A. hasn't he B. isn't he C. isn't it D. hasn't it
3. ____ joyful he was to meet his brother again!
- A. How B. What C. What a D. What an
4. Let us pass, ____?
- A. shan't we B. shall we C. won't we D. will you
5. I suppose he's serious, ____?
- A. do I B. don't I C. is he D. isn't he
6. You had better not smoke here, ____?
- A. will you B. had you C. shall you D. have you
7. Train as hard as you can ____ you'll win the swimming competition.
- A. then B. but C. and D. or
8. I'm sorry to have to say this, ____ you forgot to turn off the lights when you left the room last night.
- A. and B. but C. so D. because
9. John has not yet passed the driving test, and ____.
- A. Henry hasn't too B. Henry also has not either C. neither Henry has D. neither has Henry
10. There are many sports lovers in his office. Some love climbing, ____ others enjoy swimming.
- A. or B. for C. while D. so
11. ---- Do you feel like going out ____ would you rather have dinner at home?
---- I'd like to go out. A. or B. and C. but D. so
12. ---- "____ is the temperature today?" ---- "It's 38 degrees."
- A. Which B. How C. How hot D. How high
13. ---- Your uncle isn't an engineer, is he? ---- ____.
- A. Yes, he isn't B. No, he isn't C. No, he is D. He is
14. ____ friendly ____ to everyone!
- A. How, is she B. What, is she C. How, she is D. What, she is
15. Mary went to bed early, ____ she felt very tired.
- A. or B. so C. for D. yet
16. Mother ____ a dress when she cut her finger.
- A. was making B. makes C. is making D. made
17. He lay in bed ____ read something borrowed from library.
- A. but B. and C. or D. yet
18. ---- I'd really like some lunch but I have so much work to do.
---- ____ what you want and I can get it for you.
- A. Tell me B. If you would say to me C. You will tell me D. If you tell me
19. As he is strong, ____ can lift one hundred pounds.
- A. yet he B. but he C. and D. he
20. ---- I thought you had an umbrella. ---- I had, ____ I've lost it.
- A. since B. but C. because D. so
21. ____ down the radio ---- the baby's asleep in the next room.
- A. Turning B. To turn C. Turned D. Turn
22. ---- I don't like chicken ____ fish. ---- I don't like chicken ____ I like fish very much.
- A. and, and B. and, but C. or, and D. or, but
23. ---- Would you like to come to dinner tonight? ---- I'd like to, ____ I'm too busy.

- A. and B. so C. as D. but
24. Would you like a cup of coffee ____ shall we get down to business right away?
A. and B. then C. or D. otherwise
25. She set out soon after dark ____ home an hour later.
A. arriving B. to arrive C. having arrived D. and arrived
26. "Can't you read?" Mary said ____ to the notice.
A. angrily pointing B. and point angrily C. angrily pointed D. and angrily pointed
27. She thought I was talking about her daughter, ____, in fact, I was talking about my daughter.
A. whom B. where C. which D. while
28. ____ it with me and I'll see what I can do.
A. When left B. Leaving C. If you leave D. Leave
29. ---- Alice, you feed the bird today, ____? ---- But I fed it yesterday.
A. do you B. will you C. didn't you D. don't you
30. ____ him and then try to copy what he does.
A. Mind B. Glance at C. Stare at D. Watch

四、按要求完成下列句子:

1. He dares to tell the truth. (改为否定句)
2. They have lived here for more than ten years. (对画线部分提问)
3. There will be a sports meet at the end of this month, _____? (完成反意疑问)
4. You must be careful with your pronunciation. (改为祈使句)
5. They went for a walk after supper yesterday evening.(改为一般疑问句)
6. It is an interesting story. (改为感叹句)
7. This magazine comes out (出版) every other week. (对画线部分提问)
8. They could hardly believe his words, _____? (完成反意疑问)
9. The moon is shining brightly. (改为感叹句)
10. Our English teacher is always encouraging us to speak English in class. (对画线部分提问)

参考答案:

练习一:

一、1、主语，定语；2、间接宾语；3、谓语，状语；4、定语；5、状语，状语；6、定语，表语；7、宾语，状语；8、谓语，主语；9、谓语；10、主语，表语；11、谓语，宾语；12、状语；13、形式宾语，真正宾语；14、宾语、定语；15、插入语，状语；16、宾语(间宾+直宾)；17、状语，状语；18、形式主语，表语，宾补；19、宾补；20、表语

二、略

三、略

四、1~5 CBDBB 6~10 ACBAB

练习二:

一、1、简单句；2、复合句；3、简单句；4、简单句；5、并列句；6、复合句；7、并列句；8、复合句；9、简单句；10、简单句

二、

I hope you are very well (复合句). I'm fine, but tired (简单句). Right now it is the summer vacation and I'm helping my Dad on the farm (并列句). August is the hottest month here (简单句). It is the time of year for the rice harvest, so every day I work from dawn until dark. (并列句) Sometimes we go on working after dark by the lights of our tractors (简单句). We grow rice in the south of the States, but in the north where it is colder they grow wheat (并列复合句). We have a lot of machines on the farm (简单句). Although the farm is large, my Dad has only two men working for him (复合句). But he employs more men for the harvest (简单句). My brother takes care of the vegetable garden (简单句). It doesn't often rain in the summer here (简单句). As a result, we have to water the vegetable garden (简单句). Every evening we pump water from a well (简单句). It then runs along channels to different parts of the garden (简单句).

Most Saturday evenings there is a party, even at harvest time (简单句). These parties often make us very happy (简单句). We cook meat on an open fire outside (简单句). It's great (简单句)! Americans eat a lot of meat — too much in my opinion (简单句). Some of my friends drink beer (简单句). I don't, because I have to drive home after the party (复合句). In your letter you asked about the time in different areas of the States (简单句). There are five different time areas in the States (简单句). In my state we are fourteen hours behind Beijing time (简单句). How many different time areas do you have in China (简单句)? Well, I must stop and get some sleep (简单句). Please give my best regards to your parents (简单句).

三、1~5 ACADD 6~10 BCBDC 11~15 ADBCC 16~20 ABADB 21~25 DDDCD 26~30 ADDBD

四、1. He doesn't dare to tell the truth. 或 He dare not tell the truth. 2. How long have they lived here? 3. won't there 4. Be careful with your pronunciation. 5. Did they go for a walk after supper yesterday evening? 6. What an interesting story (it is)! 或 How interesting the story is! 7. How often does this magazine come out? 8. could they 9. How brightly the moon is shining! 10. Who is always encouraging us to speak English in class?

语法复习二、主谓一致

在英语句子里，谓语受主语支配，其动词必须和主语在人称和数上保持一致，这就叫主谓一致。寻其规律，大致可归纳为三个原则，即语法一致、逻辑意义一致和就近一致原则。

(一) 语法一致原则：语法上一致就是谓语动词和主语在单、复数形式上保持一致。

1、以单数名词或代词、动词不定式短语、动名词短语或从句作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式；主语为复数时，谓语动词用复数形式。如：His father **is working** on the farm. / To study English well **is** not easy. / What he said **is** very important for us all. / The children **were** in the classroom two hours ago. / Reading in the sun **is** bad for your eyes.

注意：由 what 引导的主语从句，后面的谓语动词多数情况用单数形式，但若表语是复数或 what 从句是一个带有复数意义的并列结构时，主句的谓语动词用复数形式。如：What I bought **were** three English books. / What I say and do **is (are)** helpful to you.

2、由连接词 and 或 both ... and 连接起来的合成主语后面，要用复数形式的谓语动词。如：Lucy and Lily **are** twins. / She and I **are** classmates. / The boy and the girl **were** surprised when they heard the news. / Both she and he **are** Young Pioneers.

注意：① 若 and 所连接的两个词是指同一个人或物时，它后面的谓语动词就应用单数形式。如：The writer and artist **has come**.; / ② 由 and 连接的并列单数主语前如果分别有 no, each, every more than a (an), many a (an) 修饰时，其谓语动词要用单数形式。如：Every student and every teacher **was** in the room.. / No boy and no girl **likes** it.

3、主语 为单数名词或代词，尽管后面跟有 with, together with, except, but, like, as well as, rather than, more than, no less than, besides, including 等引起的短语，谓语动词仍用单数形式；若主语为复数，谓语用复数形式。如：Mr Green, together with his wife and children, **has come** to China. / Nobody but Jim and Mike **was** on the playground. / She, like you and Tom, **is** very tall.

4、either, neither, each, every 或 no + 单数名词和由 some, any, no, every 构成的复合不定代词，都作单数看待。如：Each of us **has** a new book. / Everything around us **is** matter.

注意：① 在口语中当 either 或 neither 后跟有 “of+复数名词（或代词）” 作主语时，其谓语动词也可用复数。如：Neither of the texts **is (are)** interesting. ② 若 none of 后面的名词是不可数名词，它的谓语动词就要用单数；若它后面的名词是复数，它的谓语动词用单数或复数都可以。如：None of us **has (have) been** to America.

5、在定语从句时，关系代词 that, who, which 等作主语时，其谓语动词的数应与句中先行词的数一致。如：He is one of my friends who **are working** hard. / He is the only one of my friends who **is working** hard.

6、如果集体名词指的是整个集体，它的谓语动词用单数；如果它指集体的成员，其谓语动词就用复数形式。这些词有 family, class, crowd, committee, population, audience 等。如：Class Four **is** on the third floor. / Class Four **are** unable to agree upon a monitor.

注意：people, police, cattle 等名词一般都用作复数。如：The police **are looking** for the lost child.

7、由 “a lot of, lots of, plenty of, the rest of, the majority of + 名词” 构成的短语以及由 “分数或百分数+名词” 构成的短语作主语，其谓语动词的数要根据短语中后面名词的数而定。如：There **are** a lot of people in the classroom. / The rest of the lecture **is** wonderful. / 50% of the students in our class **are** girls.

注意：a number of “许多”，作定语修饰复数名词，谓语用复数；the number of “...的数量”，主语是 number，谓语用单数。

8、在倒装句中，谓语动词的数应与其后的主语一致。如：There **comes** the bus. / On the wall **are** many pictures. / Such **is** the result. / Such **are** the facts.

(二) 逻辑意义一致原则：逻辑意义一致就是谓语动词的数必须和主语的意义一致（因有时主语形式为单数，但意义为复数；有时形式为复数，但意义为单数）。

1、what, who, which, any, more, all 等代词可以是单数，也可是复数，主要靠意思来决定。如：Which **is** your bag? / Which **are** your bags? / All **is going** well. / All **have gone** to Beijing.

2、表示 “时间、重量、长度、价值” 等的名词的复数作主语时，谓语动词通常用单数形式，这是由于作主语的名词在概念上是一个整体，如：Thirty minutes **is** enough for the work.

3、若英语是书名、片名、格言、剧名、报名、国名等的复数形式，其谓语动词通常用单数形式。如：“The Arabian Nights”**is** an interesting story-book.

4、表数量的短语 “one and a half” 后接复数名词作主语时，其谓语动词可用单数形式（也可用复数。如：One and a half apples **is (are)** left on the table.

5、算式中表示数目（字）的主语通常作单数看待，其谓语动词采用单数形式。如：Twelve plus eight **is** twenty. / Fifty-six divided by eight **is** seven.

6、一些学科名词是以 -ics 结尾，如：mathematics, politics, physics 以及 news, works 等，都属于形式上是复数的名词，实际意义为单数名词，它们作主语时，其谓语动词要用单数形式。如：The paper works **was built** in 1990. / I think physics **isn't** easy to study.

7、trousers, glasses, clothes, shoes, 等词作主语时，谓语用复数，但如果这些名词前有 a (the) pair of 等量词修饰时，谓语动词用单数。如：My glasses **are** broken. / The pair of shoes under the bed **is** his.

8、“定冠词 the + 形容词或分词”，表示某一类人时，动词用复数。

(三) 就近一致原则：在英语句子中，有时谓语动词的人称和数与最近的主语保持一致。

1、当两个主语由 either ... or, neither ... nor, whether ... or ..., not only ... but also 连接时，谓

语动词和邻近的主语一致。如: Either the teacher or the students **are** our friends. / Neither they nor he **is** wholly right. / **Is** neither he nor they wholly right?

2、there be 句型 be 动词单复数取决于其后的主语。如果其后是由 and 连接的两个主语, 则应与靠近的那个主语保持一致。如: There **are** two chairs and a desk in the room..

注意: Here 引导的句子用法同上。

练习: 主谓一致

1. I, who ____ your friend, will try my best to help you with your English.
A. am B. is C. are D. be
2. The rich ____ not always happy.
A. are B. is C. has D. have
3. Neither Tom nor Jack and I ____ his students.
A. are B. am C. is D. was
4. Mary as well as her sisters ____ Chinese in China.
A. are studying B. have studied C. studies D. study
5. Neither my father nor I ____ at home.
A. am B. is C. are D. be
6. Not only my brother but also I ____ good at painting. Both of us ____ good painters.,
A. are; are B. am; am C. am; are D. is; is
7. Every' boy and every girl ____ to attend the evening party.
A. wish B. wishes C. is like D. like
8. Over 80 percent of the population of China ____ peasants.
A. was B. is C. would be D. are
9. The population of China ____ larger than that of .any other country in the world.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
10. Every means ____ tried but without any result.
A. have been B. is to be C. are to be D. has been
11. Alice, together with two boys, ____ for having broken the rule.
A. was punished B. punished C. were punished D. being punished
12. The League secretary and the monitor ____ asked to attend the .meeting this afternoon.
A. is B. was C. are D. is being
13. The great writer and professor ____.
A. is an old man B. are both old men
C. is an old man and a young man D. were two Chinese

14. There ____ a pen, two pencils and three books on the desk.
A. are B. is C. has D. have
15. A large number of students in our class ____ girls.
A. are B. was C. is D. be
16. The number of deer, mountain lions and wild roses ____ much if people leave things as they are.
A. doesn't change B. don't change C. change D. changed
17. The Arabian Nights ____ well known to the English.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
18. Chairman Mao's works ____ published.
A. has been B. have been C. was D. is
19. A chemical works ____ built there.
A. is to being B. have been C. were to D. has been
20. The Olympic Games ____ held every ____ years.
A. is; four B. are; four C. is; five D. are; five
21. The United States of America ____ one of the most developed countries in the world.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
22. He is the only one of the students *who* ____ elected.
A. are B. have C. has D. is
23. This is one of the most interesting questions that ____ asked.
A. have B. has C. have been D. has been
24. Many a man ____ come to help us.
A. have B. has C. is D. are
25. "All ____ present and all ____ going on well," our monitor said.
A. is; is B. are; are C. are; is D. is; are
26. The police ____ the murderer everywhere *when* he suddenly appeared in a theatre.
A. is searching for B. were searching for
C. are searching for D. were searching
27. Your trousers ____ dirty. You must have ____ washed.
A. is; it B. are; it C. are; them D. is; them
28. This pair of trousers ____ too long for him.
A. is B. be C. are D. were
29. One and a half bananas ____ left on the table.
A. is B. are C. has D. have

30. Eight times eight ____ sixty - four.
 A.is B.are C.get D.equal
- 31 .Ten minutes ____ an hour when one is waiting for a phone call.
 A.seems B.seem C.seemed D.seemes
32. ____ of the money ____ nm out.
 A. Three-fifth; has B. Three-fifth; has been
 C. Three-fifths; has D. Three-fifths; have
33. The whole class ____ the teacher attentively.
 A. are listening to B. is listening to
 C.are listening D. is listening
- 34.I have finished a large part of the book, the rest of which ____ more difficult.
 A.is B.are C.was D.were
35. Between the two rows of trees ____ the teaching building.
 A.stand B.stands C. standing D.are
36. Large quantities of water ____ for irrigation.
 A. is needed B. has -needed C. are needed D. need
37. That they were wrong in these matters ____ now clear to us all.
 A. is B.was C.are D.all
- 38.What we need ____ good textbooks.
 A.is B.are C.have D.has
39. What you said just now ____ the matter we are discussing.
 A.have something to at B. has something to do with
 C.had something to do with D.has been something to do with
40. More than one member ____ against the plan.
 A. is B.are C.has D.have
41. When and where to build the new factory ____ yet.
 A. has not decided B. is not decided
 C. are not decided D. have not decided
42. Half of the fruit ____ bad.
 A. are B. has C. is D. have
43. ____ either of your parents come to see you recently?
 A. Have B. Had C. Has D. Is
44. Mathematics ____ the language of science.

- A. are B. are going to be C. is D. is to be
45. My family ____ small.
A. is B. were C. are D. makes
46. The following ____ some other examples.
A. are B. is C. was D. were
47. They both have some friends; but his ____ more active.
A. is B. will be C. was D. are
48. Both rice and wheat ____ grown in that country.
A. is B. are C. was D. has
49. Early to bed and early to rise ____ a good habit.
A. are B. is C. were D. was
50. To play basketball and to go swimming ____ useful for character-training.
A. was B. is C. are D. were
51. Either he or I ____ to attend the mass meeting this evening.
A. is B. am C. are D. be
52. ____ either he or I to attend the mass meeting this evening.
A. is B. am C. are D. be
53. An iron and steel works, with some satellite factories, ____ to be built here.
A. are B. were C. is D. will
54. She as well as her brother ____ a League member.
A. are B. were C. will D. is
55. His family ____ a big one. Now the family ____ watching TV.
A. is, are B. are, is C. is, is D. are, are
56. It is I who ____ going to attend the meeting tomorrow.
A. is B. am C. are D. be
57. More than 60% of the students ____ the countryside.
A. is B. are C. is from D. are from
58. Many a man ____ the novel.
A. has read B. have read C. is read D. are read
59. Tom is the only one of the students who ____ going to swim this afternoon.
A. is B. was C. are D. were
60. Here ____ a pen, a few pencils and some paper for you.
A. are B. is C. was D. were

参考答案

语法复习二：主谓一致

1~5 AAACA 6~10 CBDAD 11~15 ACABA 16~20 AABDB 21~25 ADCBC
26~30 BCAA 31~35 ACAAB 36~40 CABBA 41~45 BCCCA 46~50 ADBBC
51~55 BACDA 56~60 BDAAB

语法复习三：名词性从句

名词性从句相当于名词，可分别作主句的主语、表语、宾语和同位语。因此，名词性从句分为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句和同位从句。

(一) 引导名词性从句的连接词

1、连接代词：who, whose, whom, what, which。有词义，在从句中担任成分，如主语、表语、宾语、或定语等。

2、连接副词：when, where, why, how。有词义，在从句中担任成分，作状语。

3、连接词：that, whether, if, as if。that 无词义，在从句中不担任成分，有时可省略；if (whether), as if 虽有词义，但在从句中不担任成分。

注意：连接代词与连接副词在句中不再是疑问句，因而从句中谓语不用疑问式。连接代词与连接副词在从句充当句子成分，连接词 whether 和 if (是否)，as if (好象) 在从句中不充当句子成分，只起连接作用。根据句义，如果连接代词与连接副词，whether、if 和 as if 都用不上时，才用 that 作连接词 (that 本身无任何含义)。

(二) 主语从句

1、主语从句在复合句作主语。

e.g. Who will go is not important.

2、用 it 作形式主语，主语从句放在句末。

e.g. It doesn't matter so much whether you will come or not.

3、that 引导主语从句时，不能省略。

e.g. That he suddenly fell ill last week made us surprised.

(三) 表语从句

1、表语从句在复合句中作表语，位于系动词之后。

e.g. The question was who could go there.

2、引导表语从句的连接词 that 有时可省去。

e.g. My idea is (that) we can get more comrades to help in the work.

(四) 宾语从句

1、宾语从句在复合句中作宾语。引导宾语从句的连词 that 一般可省略。

e.g. I hope (that) everything is all right.

2、介词之后的宾语从句，不可用 which 或 if 连接，要分别用 what 或 whether。

e.g. I'm interested in whether you've finished the work..

I'm interested in what you've said.

3、whether 与 if 都可以引导宾语从句，常可互换。但下面情况不能互换。

①宾语从句是否定句时，只用 if，不用 whether。

e.g. I wonder if it doesn't rain.

②用 if 会引起误解，就要用 whether。

e.g. Please let me know whether you want to go. (此句如果把 whether 改成 if，容易当成条件句理解)

③宾语从句中的 whether 与 or not 直接连用，就不能换成 if；不直接连用，可换。

e.g. I don't know whether or not the report is true.

I don't know whether/ if the report is true or not.

④介词后的宾语从句要用 **whether** 引导。**whether** 可与不定式连用。**whether** 也可引导主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句，还可引导让步状语从句，以上均不能换成 **if**。但引导条件从句时，只能用 **if**，而不能用 **whether**。

e.g. It depends on whether we have enough time.

They don't know whether to go there.

Please come to see me if you have time.

(五) 同位语从句

同位语从句在句中作某一名词的同位语，一般位于该名词（如：news, fact, idea, suggestion, promise 等）之后，说明该名词的具体内容。

e.g. I have no idea when he will be back.

The fact that he had not said anything surprised everybody.

练习：名词性从句

一、判断下列各句哪句含有名词性从句，并指出是什么从句：

1. China is no longer what it used to be.
2. The truth that the earth turn around the sun is known to all.
3. It was snowing when he arrived at the station.
4. How he persuaded the manager to change the plan is interesting to us all.
5. The news that they had won the game soon spread over the whole school.
6. The news that you told me yesterday was really disappointing.
7. That is where Lu Xun used to live.
8. He spoke as if he understood what he was talking about.
9. Do you remember the teacher who taught us English at middle school?
10. I wonder why she refused my invitation.

二、用适当的连词填空：

1. I can't decide _____ dictionary I should buy.
2. That's _____ he refused my invitation.
3. I am very interested in _____ he has improved his pronunciation in such a short time.
4. _____ we need is more time.
5. The fact _____ she had not said anything at the meeting surprised everybody.
6. _____ and _____ they will meet has not been decided yet.
7. Please tell me _____ you are waiting for.
8. Is that _____ you are looking for?
9. Would you please tell me _____ the nearest post office is?
10. I don't know _____ he will agree to the plan or not.

三、选择填空：

1. Do you see _____ I mean?
A. that B. / C. how D. what
2. Tell me _____ is on your mind.
A. that B. what C. which D. why

3. We must stick to _____ we have agreed on.
 A. what B. that C. / D. how
4. Let me see _____.
 A. that can I repair the radio B. whether -I can repair the radio
 C. I can repair the radio D. whether can I repair the radio
5. Keep in mind _____.
 A. that the teacher said B. what did the teacher say
 C. that did the teacher say D. what the teacher said
6. Could you advise me _____?
 A. which book should I read first B. what book should I read first
 C. that book I should read first D. which book I should read first
7. He was criticized for _____.
 A. he had done it B. what he had done C. what had he done D. that he had done it
8. Would you kindly tell me _____?
 A. how can I get to the Beijing Railway Station
 B. how I can get to the Beijing Railway Station
 C. where can I get to the Beijing Railway Station
 D. whether can I get to the Beijing Railway Station
9. Mrs. Smith was very much impressed by _____.
 A. what had she seen in China B. that she had seen in China
 C. what she had seen in China D. which had she seen in China
10. We took it for granted _____.
 A. that they were not coming B. that were they not coming
 C. they were coming not D. were they not coming
11. I really don't know _____.
 A. I should do next B. what should I do next
 C. what I should do next D. how I should do next
12. I'm afraid _____.
 A. the little girl will have to be operated on
 B. that will the little girl have to operate on
 C. the little girl will have to operate on
 D. that will the little girl have to be operated on
13. She walked up to _____.
 A. where did I stand B. where I stood
 C. I stood there D. where I stood there
14. Can you tell me _____?
 A. who is that gentleman B. that gentleman is who
 C. who that gentleman is D. whom is that gentleman
15. We'll give you _____.
 A. that do you need B. what do you need

- C. whatever you need D. whether do you need
16. They want us to know _____ to help us.
A. what can they B. what they can C. how they can D. how can they
17. We must put _____ into practice.
A. what we have learned B. that we have learned
C. that have we learned D. what have we learned
18. Did she say anything about _____?
A. that the work was to be done B. how was the work to be done
C. that was the work to be done D. how the work was to be done
19. He was never satisfied with _____.
A. what she had achieved B. had what she achieved
C. she had achieved D. that she achieved
20. These photographs will show you _____.
A. what does our village look like B. what our village looks like
C. how does our village look like D. how our village looks like
21. Peter insisted _____ he pay the bill.
A. on that B. what C. that D. on which
22. They urged _____ the library open during the vacation.
A. when B. where C. why D. that
23. We wish we could have learned _____ when we were at high school.
A. what you did B. that you had done
C. that what you did D. what did you do
24. I will describe to you _____ I saw when there.
A. what B. that C. which D. /
25. From _____ I should say he is a good worker.
A. what I know of him B. that I do know of him
C. what do I know of him D. that do I know of him
26. I will give this dictionary to _____ wants to have it.
A. whomever B. anyone C. whoever D. someone
27. _____ they will come here hasn't been decided yet.
A. What B. That C. When D. Where
28. _____ was said here must be kept secret.
A. Who B. The thing C. Whatever D. Where
29. It is still a question _____ we shall have our sports meet.
A. if B. that C. what D. when
30. I'm going anyway. _____ she will go is up to her to decide.
A. If or not B. Whether or not C. If D. That
31. It is strange _____ she have left without saying a word.
A. that B. what C. why D. how
32. It is very clear _____ our policy is a correct one.

- A. what B. that C. why D. where
33. _____ Mr Zhang said is quite right.
A. That B. When C. What D. Whether
34. It has been decided _____ he will be sent there.
A. if B. whether C. why D. that
35. It doesn't matter _____ he's come back or not.
A. if B. whether C. that D. when
36. It's a great pity _____ we won't be able to finish the task on time.
A. when B. that C. why D. where
37. It happened _____ I wasn't there that day.
A. when B. why C. where D. that
38. _____ you have done might do harm to other people.
A. What B. That C. Which D. The things
39. _____ leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.
A. Anyone B. The person C. Whoever D. Who
40. _____ the 2000 Olympic Games won't be held in Beijing is known to all.
A. Whether B. If C. Whenever D. That
41. _____ fails to see this will make a big mistake.
A. That B. Whoever C. Whether D. Whether or not
42. _____ we need more equipment is quite obvious.
A. What B. Whether C. That D. Whatever
43. Has it been announced _____?
A. when are the planes to take off B. that are the planes to take off
C. where are the planes to take off D. when the planes are to take off
44. That is _____ we all support his idea.
A. what B. why C. where D. when
45. That's _____ we should do.
A. that B. what C. how D. why
46. _____ is troubling me is _____ I don't understand _____ he said
A. What; that; what B. What; what; what
C. That; that; what D. Why; that; which
47. Things were not _____ they seemed to be.
A. when B. why C. that D. what
48. That's _____ I want to say.
A. all what B. what C. all which D. what that
49. That's _____ .
A. where our differences lie B. our differences lie there
C. where do our differences lie D. that where our differences lie
50. That is _____ .
A. where lived he there B. where did he live

- C. where he lived D. that where he lived
51. The questions is _____.
 A. whether is it worth doing B. that if it is worth doing
 C. whether it is worth doing D. if it is worth doing
52. Water will continue to be _____ it is today next in importance to oxygen.
 A. how B. which C. what D. as
53. That's _____.
 A. how did I become a teacher B. how I became a teacher
 C. how a teacher I became D. that I became a teacher
54. They are just _____.
 A. that what shall I have B. what shall I have
 C. that I shall have what D. what I shall have
55. It looked _____.
 A. as if it was going to rain B. that as if it was going to rain
 C. as if was it going to rain D. as if that it was going to rain
56. That's _____.
 A. how she did it B. that how did she do it.
 C. how did she do it D. what she did it
57. That is _____ we decided to put the discussion off.
 A. where B. which C. that D. why
58. That's _____ I lived when I was ten years old.
 A. where B. at which C. there where D. when
59. My suggestion is _____ we should send a few comrades to help them.
 A. if B. that C. when that D. that where
60. The idea _____ all people are selfish is wrong.
 A. what B. that C. why D. if
61. We heard the news _____ our team had won.
 A. that B. what C. whether D. why
62. The fact _____ he hadn't said anything surprised us all.
 A. why B. if C. that D. whether
63. I have no idea _____ she will be back.
 A. that B. where C. that when D. when
64. We must keep in mind the fact _____ China is still a developing country.
 A. whether B. that C. why D. when
65. They have no idea at all _____.
 A. where he has gone B. where did he go
 C. where has he gone D. which place he has gone

参考答案

语法复习三：名词性从句

一、1、表语从句；2、同位语从句；3、不是；4、主语从句；5、同位语从句；6、不是；7、表语从句；8、宾语从句；9、不是；10、宾语从句

二、1. which; 2. why; 3. how; 4. What; 5. that; 6. when, where; 7. who(m); 8. what; 9. where; 10. whether

三、1~5 DBABD 6~10 DBBCA 11~15 CABCC 16~20 BADAB 21~25 CDAAA
26~30 CCCDB 31~35 ABCDB 36~40 BDACD 41~45 BCDBB 46~50 ADBAC
51~55 CCBDA 56~60 ADABB 61~65 ACDBA

语法复习四：定语从句

(一) 定语从句一般由关系代词和关系副词引导

1、关系代词：who, whom, whose, which, that, as

2、关系副词：when, where, why

关系代词和关系副词必须位于从句之首，主句先行词之后，起着连接先行词和从句的作用，同时在从句中又充当句子成分。

e.g. She is the girl who sings best of all. (关系代词who在从句中作主语)

The comrade with whom I came knows French. (whom在从句中作介词with的宾语)

3、关系代词和关系副词的用法：1) 当先行词为人时用 who 作主语，whom 作宾语；2) 当先行词为物或整个句子时用 which，可作主语或宾语；3) 先行词为人、物时用 that，可作主语或宾语；4) whose 用作定语，可指人或物；5) 关系副词 when (指时间，在定语从句中作时间状语)，where (指地点，在定语从句中作地点状语)，why (指原因，在定语从句中作原因状语)。

(二) 限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句

1、限制性定语从句：从句与主句关系密切，去掉从句，主句意义不完整，甚至不合逻辑。

e.g. I was the only person in our office who was invited. (去掉定语从句，意思就不完整)

2、非限制性定语从句：从句对先行词关系不密切，去掉定从句，意思仍然完整。形式上用逗号隔开，不能 that 用引导。

e.g. Tom's father, who is over sixty, still works hard day and night. (who 引导非限制性定语从句，整个句子可分成两句来翻译)

(三) 使用定语从句时特别注意的几个问题

1、that 与 which 的区别。

1) 用 that 而不用 which 的情况：①先行词为不定代词 all, anything, nothing, ...; ②先行词有最高级修饰，有序数词修饰；③先行词有 only, very, any 等词修饰；④先行词既有人又有物时。

e.g. There is nothing that can prevent him from doing it. 没有什么能阻止他不干那件事。

The first place that they visited in Guilin was Elephant Trunk Hill. 在桂林他们所参观的第一个地方是象鼻山。

This is the best film that I have ever seen. 这部电影是我看过的最好的一部。

Mr Smith is the only foreigner that he knows. 史密斯先生是他认识的唯一的外国人。

2) 用 which 而不用 that 的情况：①引导非限制性定语从句；②代表整个主句的意思；③介词 + 关系代词。

e.g. He had failed in the maths exam, which made his father very angry. 他数学考试没有及格，这使他的父亲很生气。

This is the room in which my father lived last year. 这是父亲去年居住过的房子。

3) as 引导定语从句时的用法

①as 引导限制性定语从句通常用于 the same ... as, such ... as 结构中。

e.g. I want the same shirt as my friend's. 我要一件跟我朋友一样的衬衫。

Such machines as are used in our workshop are made in China. 我们车间使用的这种机器是中国制造的。

②as 引导非限制性定语从句既可放在主句之前，也可放在主句之后，用来修饰整个句子。

通常用下列句型: as is known to all, as is said, as is reported, as is announced, as we all know, as I expect 等。

e.g. As I expected, he got the first place again in this mid-term examination. 正如我所预料的那样, 他在这次期中考试中又获得了第一名。

3) as 引导非限制性定语从句时与 which 的区别

①当主句和从句语义一致时, 用 as; 反之, 用 which 来引导非限制性定语从句。

e.g. He made a long speech, as we expected.

He made a long speech, which was unexpected.

②当非限定定语从句为否定时, 常用 which 引导。

e.g. Tom drinks a lot every day, which his wife doesn't like at all.

2. 关系代词在从句中作主语时, 从句的谓语动词单数还是用复数应由先行词决定。

e.g. The man who lives downstairs speaks English fluently. 住在楼下的那个人英语说得很流利。

The students who are in Grade Three are going to climb the hill tomorrow.

3. 定语从句有时不直接紧靠先行词, 中间由一个定语、状语或谓语隔开。

e.g. There is an expression in his eyes that I can't understand.

4. 引导定语从句的关系副词有时可以用“介词 + which”来代替。

e.g. October 1, 1949 was the day on which (= when) the People's Republic of China was founded.

5. 当定语从句中谓语动词是带介词或副词的固定短语动词时, 短语动词的各个固定部分不要拆开。

e.g. The sick man whom she is looking after is her father.

6. 介词在关系代词前, 只能用 which 和 whom, 且不能省略; 介词在句尾, 关系代词可有 which, that, whom, 口语中也可用 who, 且可省略。

e.g. The man (whom/ who/ that) you were talking about has come to school.

练习、定语从句

一、把下列每对句子合并成含有定语从句的主从复合句:

1. The fan is on the desk. You want it.

2. The man is in the next room. He brought our textbooks here yesterday.

3. The magazine is mine. He has taken it away.

4. The students will not pass the exam. They don't study hard.

5. The woman is our geography teacher. You saw her in the park.

6. The letter is from my sister. I received it yesterday.

7. The play was wonderful. We saw it last night.
8. The train was late. It was going to Nanning.
9. The boy is my brother. He was here a minute ago.
10. The tree is quite tall. He is climbing it.
11. Here is the girl. Her brother works in this shop.
12. That's the child. We were looking at his drawing just now.
13. This is the boy. His sister is a famous singer.
14. I want to talk to the boys. Their homework haven't been handed in.
15. Is that the woman? Her daughter is in my class.
16. He used to live in a big house. In front of it grew many banana trees.
17. They passed a factory. At the back of the factory there were rice fields.
18. The soldier ran to the building. On the top of it flew a flag.
19. In the evening they arrived at a hill. At the foot of the hill there was a temple.
20. She came into a big room. In the middle of it stood a large table.

二、根据句子意思, 在第一个空白处填入介词, 在第二个填入关系代词 whom 或 which:

1. The person _____ I spoke just now is the manager that I told you about.
2. The pencil _____ he was writing broke.
3. Wu Dong, _____ I went to the concert, enjoyed it very much.
4. The two things _____ Marx was not sure were the grammar and some of the idioms of English.
5. Her bag, _____ she put all her books, has not been found.
6. The stories about the Long March, _____ this is one example, are well written.

三、选择填空：

1. The man ____ visited our school yesterday is from London.
A. who B. which C. whom D. when
2. The woman ____ is talking to my mother is a friend of hers.
A. whose B. who C. whom D. which
3. Because of my poor memory, all ____ you told me has been forgotten.
A. that B. which C. what D. as
4. Do you remember those days ____ we spent along the seashore very happily?
A. when B. where C. which D. who
5. Tom did not take away the camera because it was just the same camera ____ he lost last week.
A. which B. that C. whom D. as
6. Those ____ want to go please sign their names here.
A. whom B. which C. who D. when
7. Where is the man ____ I met this morning?
A. when B. where C. which D. who
8. Who is the woman ____ is sweeping the floor over there?
A. who B. / C. that D. when
9. The man ____ you talked just now is a worker.
A. who B. whom C. to whom D. to who
10. The man ____ you are going to make friends is my father's neighbour.
A. with whom B. when C. to whom D. which
11. The doctor ____ is leaving for Africa next month.
A. the nurse is talking to him B. whom the nurse is talking
C. the nurse is talking to D. who the nurse is talking
12. The man ____ around our school is from America.
A. which you showed B. you showed him C. you showed D. where you showed
13. He talked about a hero ____ no one had ever heard.
A. of whom B. from whom C. about that D. who
14. In fact the Swede did not understand the three questions ____ were asked in French.
A. where B. who C. in which D. which
15. Have you read the book ____ I lent to you?
A. that B. whom C. when D. whose
16. Finally, the thief handed over everything ____ he had stolen to the police.
A. that B. which C. whatever D. all
17. The foreign guests, ____ were government officials, were warmly welcomed at the airport.
A. most of them B. most of that C. most of whom D. most of those
18. This is the very letter ____ came last night.
A. who B. which C. that D. as
19. I know only a little about this matter; you may ask ____ knows better than I.
A. whoever B. whomever C. anyone D. the one

20. This is the school ____ we visited three days ago.
A. where B. / C. when D. what
21. This is the factory ____ we worked a year ago.
A. where B. that C. which D. on which
22. Nearby were two canoes ____ they had come to the island.
A. which B. in which C. that D. /
23. Jack is pleased with ____ you have given him and all ____ you have told him.
A. that, what B. what, that C. which, what D. that, which
24. Do you work near the building ____ colour is yellow?
A. that B. which C. its D. whose
25. In the dark street, there wasn't a single person ____ she could turn for help.
A. whom B. who C. to whom D. from whom
26. Is this school ____ we visited three years ago?
A. the one B. which C. that D. where
27. Is this the school ____ we visited three years ago?
A. the one B. where C. in which D. /
28. How many students are there in your class ____ homes are in the country?
A. whose B. who C. whom D. which
29. Alice received an invitation from her boss, ____ came as a surprise.
A. it B. which C. that D. he
30. The train was crowded and I had to get into a carriage ____ already seven other people.
A. when there were B. which there were C. that there were D. where there were
31. I live in the house ____ windows face south.
A. which B. whose C. where D. in that
32. ---- What game is popular with them? ---- The ____ most is tennis.
A. game they like it B. game they like C. best game they like D. best game they like it
33. They stayed with me three weeks, ____ they drank all the wine I had.
A. which B. which time C. during which time D. during which
34. The room ____ Mr White lives is not very large.
A. that B. which C. where D. when
35. Don't forget the day ____ you were received into the Youth League.
A. when B. that C. at which D. where
36. I've finished writing the novel, ____ is to be published next month.
A. that B. what C. which D. when
37. He returned home safe and sound after a fierce battle, ____ was unexpected.
A. which B. as C. that D. it
38. ____ we is known to all, English is not very difficult to learn.
A. What B. As C. That D. Which

39. The old man had three sons, all of ____ died during World War II.
A. whose B. that C. whom D. who
40. I have bought two pens, ____ write well.
A. none of which B. neither of which C. both of which D. all of which
41. Do you know the reason ____ she has changed her mind?
A. why B. which C. for that D. of which
42. He failed in the exam, ____ proves that he wasn't working hard enough.
A. which B. what C. it D. that
43. During the week ____ he tried to collect materials for his article.
A. following B. followed C. to follow D. that followed
44. ____ was expected, he succeeded in the exam.
A. It B. Which C. As D. That
45. He studied hard and later became a well-known writer, ____ his father expected.
A. that was what B. what was that C. and which was D. which was what
46. We should read such books ____ will make us better and wiser.
A. when B. as C. whose D. what
47. You must show my wife the same respect ____ you show me.
A. when B. as C. whose D. what
48. He is absent ____ is often the case.
A. what B. which C. who D. as
49. It is the first time ____ I have come to your city.
A. that B. which C. what D. when
50. Who ____ has the same idea as it will do it in this way.
A. who B. that C. whom D. which
51. I shall never forget those years ____ I lived in the country with the farmers, ____ has a great effect on my life.
A. that, which B. when, which C. which, that D. when, who
52. This is the only book ____ I can find.
A. that B. which C. it D. with which
53. I don't like ____ you speak to her.
A. the way B. the way in that C. the way which D. the way of which
54. That is one of those books that ____ worth reading.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
55. This is the only one of the students whose handwriting ____ the best.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
56. There was ____ to prevent the accident.
A. something could do B. anything we could do
C. nothing we couldn't do D. nothing we could do

参考答案

语法复习四：定语从句

一、 1. The fan that you want is on the desk. 2. The man who brought our textbooks here yesterday is in next room. 3. The magazine which he has taken away is mine. 4. The students who don't study hard will not pass the exam. 5. The woman you saw in the park is our geography teacher. 6. The letter I received yesterday is from my sister. 7. The play that we saw last night was wonderful. 8. The train which was going to Nanning was late. 9. The boy who was here a minute ago is my brother. 10. The tree he is climbing is quite tall. 11. Here is the girl whose brother works in this shop. 12. That's the child whose drawing we were looking at just now. 13. This is the boy whose sister is a favous singer. 14. I want to talk to the boy whose homework hasn't been handed in. 15. Is that the woman whose daughter is in my class? 16. He used to live in a big house, in front of which grew many banana trees. 17. They passed a factory, at the back of which there were rice fields. 18. The soldier ran to the building, on the top of which flew a flag. 19. In the evening they arrived at a hill, at the foot of which there was a temple. 20. She came into a big room, in the middle of which stood a large table.

二、 1. to whom; 2. wiht which; 3. with whom; 4. about which; 5. in which; 6. of which

三、 1~5 ABACD 6~10 CDCCA 11~15 CCADA 16~20 ACCAB 21~25 ABBDC
26~30 ADABD 31~35 BBDCA 36~40 CABCC 41~45 AADCD 46~50 BBDAB

语法复习五：强调句、It 的用法、省略和插入语

一、强调句

(一) 强调句句型

1、陈述句的强调句型：It is/ was + 被强调部分（通常是主语、宾语或状语）+ that/ who（当强调主语且主语指人）+ 其它部分。

e.g. It was **yesterday** that he met Li Ping.

2、一般疑问句的强调句型：同上，只是把 is/ was 提到 it 前面。

e.g. Was it **yesterday** that he met Li Ping?

3、特殊疑问句的强调句型：被强调部分（通常是疑问代词或疑问副词）+ is/ was + it + that/ who + 其它部分？

e.g. **When and where** was it that you were born?

4、强调句例句：针对 I met Li Ming at the railway station yesterday. 句子进行强调。

强调主语：It was **I** that (who) met Li Ming at the railway station yesterday.

强调宾语：It was **Li Ming** that I met at the railway station yesterday.

强调地点状语：It was **at the railway station** that I met Li Ming yesterday.

强调时间状语：It was **yesterday** that I met Li Ming at the railway station.

5、注意：构成强调句的 it 本身没有词义；强调句中的连接词一般只用 that, who，即使在强调时间状语和地点状语时也如此，that, who 不可省略；强调句中的时态只用两种，一般现在时和一般过去时。原句谓语动词是一般过去时、过去完成时和过去进行时，用 It was ...，其余的时态用 It is ...。

(二) not ... until ... 句型的强调句

1、句型为：It is/ was not until + 被强调部分 + that + 其它部分

e.g. 普通句：He didn't go to bed until/ till his wife came back.

强调句：It was **not until his wife came back** that he went to bed.

2、注意：此句型只用 until，不用 till。但如果不是强调句型，till, until 可通用；因为句型中 It is/ was not ... 已经是否定句了，that 后面的从句要用肯定句，切勿再用否定句了。

(三) 谓语动词的强调

1、It is/ was ... that ... 结构不能强调谓语，如果需要强调谓语时，用助动词 do/ does 或 did。

e.g. **Do** sit down. 务必请坐。

He **did** write to you last week. 上周他确实给你写了信。

Do be careful when you cross the street. 过马路时，务必（千万）要小心啊！

2、注意：此种强调只用 do/ does 和 did，没有别的形式；过去时用 did，后面的谓语动词用原形。

二、It 的用法

(一) 作人称代词

1、it 代替前面（或后面）的单数名词或分句等所表示的事物。

e.g. You cannot eat your cake but have it. (it 代替前面的 cake)

Although we cannot see it, there is air all around us. (it 代替后面的 air)

They say he has left town, but I don't believe it. (it 代替前面 They...town 分句中的情况)

2、代替有生命但不能或不必要分阴阳性的东西（包括婴儿）。

e.g. Yesterday we saw a big tree. It was fully twenty metres high. (it 代替前面的 tree)

The baby cried because it was hungry. (it 代替前面的 baby)

3、在某些习惯说法中，可以代替人。

e.g. ---- Someone is knocking at the door, Peter. ---- Who is it? ---- It's me.

---- Who are singing? ---- It is the children.

---- The light is still on in the lab. It must be the third-year students doing the experiment.

4、it 与 one 的区别：这两个词都可以代表前面说过的名词，但 it 用于同名同物的场合；one 则用于同名异物的场合。

e.g. ---- Do you still have the bicycle? ---- No, I have sold *it*.

---- Is this knife yours? ---- No. It is Xiao Zhang's. Mine is the *one* on the desk.

5、it 与 that 的区别：两词都可代替某一特定名词，但 that 指同一类，并非同一个。

e.g. The climate of South China is mild (温和的); I like *it* very much. (it 指 the climate of South China)

The climate of South China is much better than *that* of Japan. (that 指 the climate)

(二) 作无人称代词

it 作无人称代词时，除了句中找不到它所代表的词语外，另一个特点是它后面的内容都是表示天气、时间、距离、度量衡及情况等。

It is fine (rainy, windy, etc.).

It is noon.

It is a half hour's walk to the factory.

It is eighteen square metres in area.

What does it matter?

(三) 作强调词，构成强调结构

用以帮助改变句子结构，使句子的某一成分受到强调。“It is (was) + 所强调的成分 + that (who) + 其它成分。”在这个句型中，it 本身没有词义。详见“一、强调句”。

(四) 引导词 it 作形式主语（宾语）

为了使句子平衡，常采用形式主语（或宾语）it，而把真正的主语（或宾语）置于句子后面。通常引导词 it 与它所代替的句子成分中间要夹有某些词。

e.g. It takes half an hour to go there on foot. (It 与 to go there on foot 之间夹有 takes half an hour 四个词)

16. It was ____ I met Mr Green in Shanghai.
A. many years that B. many years before C. many years ago that D. many years when
17. ____ is not everybody ____ can draw so well.
A. It, all B. It, that C. There, who D. There, that
18. So ____ that no fish can live in it.
A. shallow is the lake B. the lake is shallow C. shallow the lake is D. is the lake shallow

三、省略

为了使讲话和行文简洁，句中某些成分有时可省略。省略可分以下几种情况：

(一) 简单句中的省略

1、省略主语：祈使句中主语通常省略。其它省略主语多限于少数现成的说法。

e.g. (I) Thank you for your help. (括号内为省略的词语，下同)

(I) see you tomorrow. (It) Doesn't matter.

2、省略主谓语或主谓语的一部分。

e.g. (There is) No smoking. (Is there) Anything wrong? Why (do you) not say hello to him?

3、省略作宾语的不定式短语，只保留 to。

e.g. ---- Are you going there? ---- I'd like **to** (go there).

He did not give me the chance, though he had promised **to** (give me the chance).

注意：如果该宾语是 be 动词或完成时态，则须在 to 之后加上 be 或 have。

e.g. ---- Are you an engineer? ---- No, but I want to be.

---- He hasn't finished the task yet. ---- Well, he ought to have.

4、省略表语。

e.g. ---- Are you thirsty? ---- Yes, I am (thirsty).

5、同时省略几个成分。

e.g. Let's meet at the same place as (we met) yesterday.

---- Have you finished your work? ---- (I have) Not (finished my work) yet.

(二) 并列句中的省略

两个并列分句中，后一个分句常省略与前一分句中相同的部分。

e.g. My father is a doctor and my mother (is) a nurse.

I study at college and my sister (studies) at high school.

(三) 主从复合句中的省略

1、主句中有一些成分被省略。

e.g. (I'm) Sorry to hear that you are ill.

(It is a) Pity that he missed such a good chance.

2、省略了一个从句或从句的一部分，用 so 或 not (切不可用 it 或 that) 代替。

e.g. ---- Is he coming back tonight? ---- I think **so**.

---- Is he feeling better today?

---- I'm afraid **not**.

这种用法常见的有: How so? Why so? Is that so? I hope so. He said so 及 I suppose not. I believed not. I hope not 等。(但 I don't think so 比 I think not 更常用)。

(四) 其它省略

1、连词 **that** 的省略:

①、宾语从句中常省略连词 **that**, 但也有不能省略的情况(参看“名词性从句”等有关部分)。

②、在定语从句中, **that** 在从句中作宾语时可省略。

③、引导主语从句、同位语从句等的连词 **that** 一般不可省略。在表语从句中偶尔可省略。

2、不定式符号 **to** 的省略

①、并列的不定式可省去后面的 **to**。

e.g. I told him to sit down and **wait for** a moment.

②、某些使役动词(如 let, make, have)及感官动词(如 see, watch, notice, hear, feel, look at 和 listen to 等)后面作宾语补足的不定式一定要省去 **to**, 但在被动语态中须把 **to** 复原。

e.g. ---- I saw the boy **fall** from the tree. ---- The boy was seen to **fall** from the tree.

③、介词 **but** 前若有动词 **do**, 后面的不定式不带 **to**。

e.g. The boy **did** nothing but **play**.

3、在某些状语从句中, 从句的主语与主句主语一致时, 可省去“主语 + **be**”部分。(参看“状语从句”有关部分)

4、连词 **if** 在部分虚拟条件句中可省略, 但后面的语序有变化(参见“倒装句”有关部分)

5、主句与从句各有一些成分省略。

e.g. The sooner (you do it), the better (it will be).

四、插入语

英语句子中(尤其在口语中)常插入一些单词、短语或者句子, 用来补充某些含义。语法上称他们为“插入语”。

(一) 插入语的类型:

1、单词(多是副词), 如: besides, however, otherwise, therefore, though 等。

e.g. She is looking fit, **though**. 他看起来倒是健康。

I can, **however**, discuss this when I see you.

2、短语

e.g. China and India, **for example**, are neighbours.

By the way, where are you from?

3、句子

e.g. He is an honest man, I believe.

Jack, as far as I know, isn't clever.

(二) 插入语的位置

通常插入语位于句中, 并用逗号隔开。但有时, 也可位于句首或句末(见上面例句)。也有

时，并不用逗号隔开。

e.g. You know that **I think** you are wrong. 我认为，你明白你错了。

What **on earth** do you mean? 你究竟是什么意思？

(三) 插入语在句中的作用

一般来说，插入语在句中不起主要作用。如果把插入语抽去，句子的含义不大受影响。但是，有的插入语却是句子不可缺少的一部分。

e.g. He got the news from **nobody knows** where. 他这消息谁也不知道是从哪儿得来的。

(四) 插入语的特殊用法

下面这种复杂的特殊疑问句，也可认为包含有“插入语”。这种疑问句（有的语法书也称为“混合疑问句”或“连锁疑问句”）常用来征询对方对某一疑问点的看法、判断、认识、猜度或请求对方重复一遍说过的话。口语中出现频率极高。常用动词有 say, suppose, guess, believe, consider, think, imagine 等。

e.g. How long **did you say** she would stay here?

When **do you suppose** they'll be back?

How old **did you think** she was

(五) 大纲中要求掌握的常用作插入语的词语

by the way 顺便说，顺便问一下；so far 到目前为止；and so on 等等；on the contrary 相反；no wonder 不足为奇；as a matter of fact 事实上；come along 快点，来吧；in other words 换句话说；as usual 如同以往；as a result 因此，结果。

练习二、省略和插入语

1. ---- Won't you have another try? ---- _____.
A. Yes, I will B. Yes, I won't C. Yes, I will have D. Yes, I won't have
2. ---- I won't do it any more. ---- _____.
A. Why don't B. Why don't do it any more C. Why not D. Why not do
3. ---- Do you think it will snow tomorrow? ---- _____.
A. No, I don't think B. I don't think C. No, I don't so D. I don't think so
4. ---- Will he fail in the exam? ---- _____.
A. Don't hope to B. Let's hope not C. Not hope so D. Let's hope not to
5. ____ usual, I have forgotten something.
A. As B. As it is C. It's D. That is
6. ____ she a man, she might be elected president.
A. If B. Unless C. Was D. Were
7. ____ I had time, I would have played it again.
A. If B. Unless C. Had D. When
8. ____ it rain tomorrow, I'd stay at home.

- A. Should B. Would C. When D. If
9. I like sports and ____ my brother.
A. so B. so does C. so is D. so likes
10. Francis, ____ born in Kentucky, lived and practised law in Missouri.
A. was B. He was C. who is D. although
11. ---- Aren't you the manager? ---- No, and I ____.
A. don't want B. don't want to C. don't want to be D. don't
12. ---- Have you fed the dog? ---- No, but ____.
A. I am B. I'm just going to C. I'm D. I'm just going
13. Your performance in the driving test didn't reach the required standard(标准) — ____, you failed.
A. in the end B. after all C. in other words D. at the same time
14. How long ____ she would stay here?
A. did she say B. she said C. did D. /
15. ____ could do such thing?
A. Whom do you think B. Who do you think C. Do you think whom D. Did you think who

练习三、综合训练

1. John was ill. Have you heard about ____?
A. this B. he C. it D. the one
2. Hurry up! ____ getting darker and darker.
A. The sky is B. It's C. Weather is D. Time is
3. It's the third time ____ I have been here.
A. that B. when C. after D. who
4. It was simply for that reason ____ I wouldn't tell him the truth.
A. why B. which C. so D. that
5. Was it in the place ____ the last emperor died?
A. where B. that C. which D. in which
6. ____ is no difference between A and B.
A. It B. Where C. There D. What
7. It ____ Mike and Mary who helped the old man several days ago.
A. was B. were C. are D. had been
8. He said, " ____ a long way to school. ____ a long way to go yet before we arrive."
A. It is, It is B. There is, There is C. There is, It is D. It is, There is
9. I don't like ____ you speak to her.
A. the way B. the way in that C. the way which D. the way of which
10. If you go to Xi'an, you'll find the palaces there more magnificent than commonly ____.
A. supposing B. suppose C. to suppose D. supposed

11. ____ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.
A. There B. This C. That D. It
12. It was about 600 years ago ____ the first clock with a face and an hour hand was made.
A. that B. until C. before D. when
13. It was not until 1920 ____ regular radio broadcast began.
A. while B. which C. that D. since
14. ---- Do you mind my taking this seat? ---- _____. A. Yes, sit down please
B. No, of course not C. Yes, take it please D. No, you can't take it
15. ---- I'll be away on a business trip. Would you mind looking after my cat? --- Not at all. _____.
A. I've no time B. I'd rather not C. I'd like it D. I'd be happy to
16. The boy wanted to ride his bicycle in the street, but his mother told him _____.
A. not to B. not to do C. not do it D. do not to
17. It was not until she came to see us ____ her mother was ill in bed.
A. when we knew B. that did we knew C. that we knew D. that did we know
18. ---- This store has such high prices. ---- I agree. Never again ____ here.
A. I will shop B. will I shop C. I do shop D. shop I
19. ____ was his kindness that everyone praised him.
A. It B. What C. So D. Such
20. ____, he would have passed the exam.
A. If he were to study B. If he studied hard C. Had he studied hard D. Should he study hard
21. ---- David has made great progress recently. ---- ____, and _____. A. So he has, so have you
B. So he has, so you have C. So has he, so have you D. So has he, so you have
22. No sooner ____ they rushed out into the street. A. did they hear the news than
B. did they hear the news when C. had they heard the news than D. had they heard the news when
23. He was unable to make such progress, _____.
A. hard as he tried B. as hard he tried C. hard he has tried D. tried hard as he

参考答案

语法复习五：强调句、It 的用法、省略和插入语

- 练习一、1~5 CBADB 6~10 ADADC 11~15 DBDBA 16~18 CBA
- 练习二、1~5 ACDBA 6~10 DCABD 11~15 CBCAB
- 练习三、1~5 CBADB 6~10 CADAD 11~15 DACBD 16~20 ACBDC 21~23 ACA

语法复习六：状语从句

由从句担任的状语，在句子中可修饰谓语（或其它动词）、形容词、副词或是整个句子，它可以用来表示时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、方式、比较、让步等。状语从句是一较大的语法项目，也是近几年高考题中常见的一个重要试点。高考中已考查了时间、让步、地点、条件、目的等状语从句，这些从句仍是今后高考热点，应作充分准备。同时对方式状语从句也应引起重视。

（一）时间状语从句

表示时间的状语从句可由 when, as, while, whenever, after, before, till (until), since, once, as soon as (或 the moment), by the time, no sooner ... than, hardly (scarcely) ... when, every time 等引导。

e.g. When I came into the office, the teachers were having a meeting.

He started as soon as he received the news.

Once you see him, you will never forget him.

No sooner had I gone to bed than I went to sleep.

（二）原因状语从句

原因状语从句是表示原因或理由的，引导这类从句的最常用的连词是 because, since, as, now that（既然）等，for 表示因果关系时（它引导的不是从句）为并列连词，语气不如 because 强。

e.g. He is disappointed because he didn't get the position.

As it is raining, I will not go out.

Now that you mention it, I do remember.

（三）地点状语从句

引导地点状语从句的连词是 where 和 wherever 等。

e.g. Sit wherever you like.

Make a mark where you have a question.

（四）目的状语从句

引导目的状语从句最常用的词（组）是 so, so that（从句谓语常有情态动词）, in order that, in case（以防，以免）等。

e.g. Speak clearly, so that they may understand you.

She has bought the book in order that she could follow the TV lessons.

He left early in case he should miss the train.

(五) 结果状语从句

结果状语从句是表示事态结果的从句，通常主句是原因，从句是结果。由 so that （从句谓语一般没有情态动词），so ... that, such ... that 等引导。

e.g. She was ill, so that she didn't attend the meeting.

He was so excited that he could not say a word.

She is such a good teacher that everyone admires her.

(六) 条件状语从句

条件状语从句分真实性（有可能实现的事情）与非真实性（条件与事实相反或者在说话者看来不大可能实现的事情）条件句。引导条件状语从句的词（组）主要有 if, unless, so (as) long as, on condition that, so (as) far as, if only (= if)。注意：条件从句中的 if 不能用 whether 替换。

e.g. If he is not in the office, he must be out for lunch.

You may borrow the book so long as you keep it clean.

So far as I know（据我所知），he will be away for three months.

You can go swimming on condition that (= if) you don't go too far away from the river bank.

If he had come a few minutes earlier, he could have seen her.

(七) 让步状语从句

让步状语从句可由 although, though, as, even if (though), however, whatever, whether ... or, no matter who (when, what, ...) 等引导。注意：as 引导的让步状语从句一般是倒装的。

e.g. Though he is a child, he knows a lot.

Child as he is, he knows a lot.

Whatever (= No matter what) you say, I'll never change my mind.

(八) 方式状语从句

方式状语从句常由 as, as if (though), the way, rather than 等引导。

e.g. You must do the exercise as I show you.

He acted as if nothing had happened.

(九) 比较状语从句

比较状语从句常用 than, so (as) ... as, the more ... the more 等引导。

e.g. I have made a lot more mistakes than you have.

He smokes cigarettes as expensive as he can afford.

The busier he is, the happier he feels.

(十) 使用状语从句时要注意的几个问题

1、在时间和条件（有时也在方式、让步等）从句中，主句是一般将来时，从句通常用一般现在时表示将来。

e.g. We'll go outing if it doesn't rain tomorrow.

I'll write to you as soon as I get to Shanghai.

2、有些时间、地点、条件、方式或让步从句，如果从句的主语与主句主语一致（或虽不一致，是 it），从句的谓语又包含动词 be，就可省略从句中的“主语 + be”部分。

e.g. When (he was) still a boy of ten, he had to work day and night.

If (you are) asked you may come in.

If (it is) necessary I'll explain to you again.

3、注意区分不同从句：引导的是什么从句，不仅要根据连词，还要根据句子结构和句意来判别。以 where 为例，能引导多种从句。

e.g. You are to find it where you left it.（地点状语从句）

Tell me the address where he lives.（定语从句，句中有先行词）

I don't know where he came from.（宾语从句）

Where he has gone is not known yet.（主语从句）

This place is where they once hid.（表语从句）

练习、状语从句

一、用横线划出下列句子中的状语从句，并指出是哪种状语从句：

1. Child as she is, she knows a lot of things.
2. The more I can do for the class, the happier I'll be.
3. He talks as if (as though) he knew all about it.
4. He is such a good teacher that the students love and respect him.
5. I shall go to the park unless it rains.
6. No sooner had I got home than it began to rain.
7. Where there is water, there is life.

8. He studied hard so that he could catch up with his classmates.
9. Since you are very busy, I won't trouble you.
10. Even if (though) I fail. I'll never lose heart.
11. Once you begin the work, you must continue.
12. I will find her wherever she may be.
13. Now that you've come, you'd better have dinner with us.
14. He was so excited that he couldn't fall asleep.
15. We must do everything as he tells us.
16. India is much bigger than Japan.
17. No matter when you come, you are warmly welcome.
18. As (So) long as you work hard, you can catch up with the other classmates.

二、用适当的连词填空：

1. Dr. Bethune (白求恩) came to China _____ he was fifty.
2. He began to work _____ he got there.
3. Let's begin our meeting _____ everyone is here.
4. I like the English people, _____ I don't like their food.
5. _____ you go in China, you can see smiling faces.
6. He didn't come to the lecture, _____ he was very busy.
7. _____ we had enough time, we walked to the cinema.
8. They will help you _____ you meet with difficulty.
9. _____ we came to the university, we have learnt quite a lot.
10. I didn't join them yesterday evening _____ I had to go to an important meeting.
11. We would try to get a car _____ we could all travel together more easily.
12. She wouldn't forget her mother's birthday _____ she seldom wrote to her family.
13. We're doing everything we can to make things as easy for you _____ we can.
14. The meeting became so disorderly _____ the speaker had to shout the audience down.
15. He was angrier _____ ever before.
16. _____ you lock all the doors, he can still manage to get in.

17. The boy was so tired _____ he fell asleep on the bus.
18. Hard _____ he tried, he couldn't force the door open.

三、选择填空：

1. I'll let you know _____ he comes back.
A. before B. because C. as soon as D. although
2. She will sing a song _____ she is asked.
A. if B. unless C. for D. since
3. We will work _____ we are needed.
A. whenever B. because C. since D. wherever
4. Read it aloud _____ the class can hear you.
A. so that B. if C. when D. although
5. _____ you go, don't forget your people.
A. Whenever B. However C. Wherever D. Whichever
6. It is about ten years _____ I met you last.
A. since B. for C. when D. as
7. They will never succeed, _____ hard they try.
A. because B. however C. when D. since
8. _____ still half drunk, he *made* his way home.
A. When B. Because C. Though D. As
9. _____ she was very tired, she went on working.
A. As B. Although C. Even D. In spite of
10. Busy _____ he was, he tried his best to help you.
A. as B. when C. since D. for
11. I learned a little Russian _____ I was at middle school.
A. though B. although C. as if D. when
12. _____ we got to the station, the train had left already.
A. If B. Unless C. Since D. When
13. _____ the rain stops, we'll set off for the station.

- A. Before B. Unless C. As soon as D. Though
14. She was _____ tired _____ she could not move an inch.
A. so, that B. such, that C. very, that D. so, as
15. We didn't go home _____ we finished the work.
A. since B. until C. because D. though
16. I'll stay here _____ everyone else comes back.
A. even if B. as though C. because D. until
17. Although it's raining, _____ are still working in the field.
A. they B. but they C. and they D. so they
18. Speak to him slowly _____ he may understand you better.
A. since B. so that C. for D. because
19. You'll miss the train _____ you hurry up.
A. unless B. as C. if D. until
20. When you read the book, you'd better make a mark _____ you have any questions.
A. at which B. at where C. the place D. where
21. We'd better hurry _____ it is getting dark.
A. and B. but C. as D. unless
22. I didn't manage to do it _____ you had explained how.
A. until B. unless C. when D. before
23. _____ he comes, we won't be able to go.
A. Without B. Unless C. Except D. Even
24. I hurried _____ I wouldn't be late for class.
A. since B. so that C. as if D. unless
25. _____ I catch a cold, I have pain in my back.
A. Every time B. Though C. Even D. Where
26. What's the matter _____ they still haven't answered the telegram?
A. when B. that C. though D. however
27. Bring it nearer _____ I may see it better.
A. although B. even though C. so that D. since

28. You may arrive in Beijing early _____ you mind taking the night train.
A. that B. though C. unless D. if
29. Helen listened carefully _____ she might discover exactly what she needed.
A. in that B. in order that C. in case D. even though
30. More people will eat out in restaurants _____ they do today.
A. than B. when C. while D. as
31. _____ hard she tries, she can hardly avoid making mistakes in her homework.
A. Much B. However C. As D. Although
32. Poor _____ it may be, there is no place like home, _____ you may go.
A. as; wherever B. though; whenever C. in spite of; when D. that; wherever
33. The child was _____ immediately after supper.
A. enough tired to go to bed B. too tired to go to bed
C. so tired that he went to bed D. very tired, he went to bed
34. The history of nursing _____ the history of man.
A. as old as B. is old than C. that is as old as D. is as old as
35. _____ born in Chicago, the author was famous for his stories about New York.
A. Since B. Once C. When D. Although
36. _____ we stood at the top of the building, the people below were hardly visible.
A. As B. Although C. Unless D. In spite of
37. Scarcely was George Washington in his teens _____ his father died.
A. than B. as C. while D. when
38. _____ David goes, he is welcome.
A. Whichever B. However C. Wherever D. Whatever
39. The house stood _____ there had been a rock.
A. which B. at which C. when D. where
40. Small _____ it is, the pen is a most useful tool.
A. because B. so C. if D. as
41. After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced _____ tractors in 1988 as the year before.

- A. as twice many B. as many twice C. twice as many D. twice many as
42. The piano in the other shop will be _____, but _____.
- A. cheaper; not as better B. more cheap; not as better
- C. cheaper; not as good D. more cheap; not as good
43. John plays football _____, if not better than, David.
- A. as well B. as well as C. so well D. so well as
44. Although he is considered a great writer,
- A. his works are not widely read B. but his works are not widely read
- C. however his works are not widely read D. still his works are not widely read
45. _____ the day went on, the weather got worse.
- A. With B. Since C. While D. As
- 46.—What was the party like?
- Wonderful. It's years _____ I enjoyed myself so much.
- A. after B. when C. before D. since
47. It was not _____ she took off her dark glasses _____ I realized she was a famous film star.
- A. when; that B. until; that C. until; when D. when; then
48. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, _____ great it is.
- A. what B. how C. however D. whatever
49. After the war, a new school building was put up _____ there had once been a theatre.
- A. that B. where C. which D. when
50. _____, Mother will wait for him to have dinner together.
- A. However late is he B. However he is late
- C. However is he late D. However late he is
51. He will come to call on you the moment he _____ his painting.
- A. will finish B. finished C. has finished D. had finished
52. _____ difficult the task may be, we will try our best to complete it in time.
- A. No matter B. No wonder C. Though D. However
53. It was _____ that she couldn't finish it by herself.
- A. so difficult a work B. such a difficult work C. so difficult work D. such difficult work

参考答案
语法复习六：状语从句

一、

1. Child as she is, she knows a lot of things. 让步
2. The more I can do for the class, the happier I'll be. 比较
3. He talks as if (as though) he knew all about it. 方式
4. He is such a good teacher that the students love and respect him. 结果
5. I shall go to the park unless it rains. 条件
6. No sooner had I got home than it began to rain. 时间
7. Where there is water, there is life. 地点
8. He studied hard so that he could catch up with his classmates. 目的
9. Since you are very busy, I won't trouble you. 原因
10. Even if (though) I fail, I'll never lose heart. 让步
11. Once you begin the work, you must continue. 时间
12. I will find her wherever she may be. 让步
13. Now that you've come, you'd better have dinner with us. 原因
14. He was so excited that he couldn't fall asleep. 结果
15. We must do everything as he tells us. 方式
16. India is much bigger than Japan. 比较
17. No matter when you come, you are warmly welcome. 让步
18. As (So) long as you work hard, you can catch up with the other classmates. 条件

二、 1. when; 2. as soon as; 3. as; 4. though; 5. Whenever; 6. because; 7. Since; 8. whenever; 9. Since;
10. because; 11. so that; 12. though; 13. as; 14. that; 15. than; 16. Even if; 17. that; 18. as

三、 1~5 CADAC 6~10 ABCBA 11~15 DDCAB 16~20 DABAD 21~25 CABBA
26~30 BCCBD 31~35 BACDD 36~40 ADCDD 41~45 CCBAD 46~50 DBCBD
51~53 CDD

语法复习七：倒装句

英语最基本的语序是主语在前，谓语动词在后。但有时由于句子结构的需要或表示强调，就要采用倒装形式。将谓语动词完全移到主语之前称为完全倒装，只将助动词或情态动词放到主语之前称为部分倒装。强调性倒装和以 so, neither, nor 开头的句子是高考例题的热点。

(一) 倒装句的意义

1、适应一定的语法结构的需要，主要是指疑问句句型结构的需要。

e.g. May I come in?

Was the People's Liberation Army founded in 1927?

2、为了强调某一部分，而把这部分放到句首，构成倒装。

e.g. Never have I been late for school this term.

So early did he come to school that no other students came.

(二) 倒装的使用情况

1、在“there be”结构里，there 是引导词，主语在 be 后。

e.g. There is a box on the table.

2、在疑问句中。

e.g. Is she singing in the classroom?

What does your mother do?

3、在 here, there 等副词开头的某些句子里（要用一般现在时态）。如果主语是人称代词，主语和主要动词的词序不变。（完全倒装）

e.g. There goes the bell.

Here is an apple for you.

There she comes.

4、重复倒装句型，用在以 so, nor, neither 开头，表示谓语所述的情况也适用于另一个人或一事物的肯定或否定句中。so 用于肯定句，表示“也一样”、“也这样”；nor, neither 用于否定句，表示“同样也不，也不这样”。

e.g. I am watching TV. So is she.

My parents didn't watch TV last night. Neither (Nor) did I.

5、直接引语的全部或部分放在句首时，主句中的主谓也常直接倒装。（完全倒装）

e.g. "Very well," said the French student.

"Bring me two eggs and a cup of tea, please." said he.

6、在以 never, little, hardly, not only, few, not, seldom 等否定副词开头的句子中，采用部分倒装。如不放在句首就不要倒装。

e.g. Little did he say at the meeting.

Never shall I forget the day when I joined the Army.

比较：I shall never forget the day when I joined the Army.

7、用于以 only 所修饰的副词、介词短语或状语从句的句子中。

e.g. Only when the war was over in 1918 was he able to get happily back to work.

Only in this way can we learn English well.

注意：如果 only 后的词组不是状语，不需倒装。

e.g. Only Wang Lili knows this.

8、为了表达生动，有时把表地点、方位的副词，如 up, down, out, away, in 等放在句首，同时把谓语动词放在主语之前。若主语为人称代词，主语和谓语动词的位置不变，只将副词放在句

首。(完全倒装)

e.g. Away hurried the boy.

Out rushed the girl.

9、在虚拟结构中，条件从句的谓语含有 were, had 和 should 这三个词是，可省去 if，将这些词移至主语之前。

e.g. Had I time (= If I had time), I would go and help you.

Were I you (= If I were you), I would go abroad.

Should he come (=If he should come), tell him to ring me up.

10、as 引导让步状语从句时要倒装(形容词/ 副词/ 名词/ 动词 + as + 主语 + 谓语)。

e.g. Proud as they are, they are afraid to see me.

Child as he is, he seems to know everything. (child 前不加冠词)

Hard as he worded, he made little progress.

11、用于某些表示祝愿的句子中。

e.g. May you succeed!

Long live the People's Republic of China!

12、So + 形容词、副词及 such 置于句首时要倒装。

So happy did he feel.

Such was me.

练习：倒装句

- Not until I began to work ____ how much time I had wasted.
A. didn't I realize B. did I realize C. I didn't realize D. I realized
- Only by practising a few hours every day ____ be able to master the language.
A. you can B. can you C. you will D. will you
- If you don't go, neither ____.
A. shall I B. do I C. I do D. I shall
- No sooner ____ to the station ____ the train left.
A. had I got, when B. I had got, than C. had I got, than D. did I get, when
- Your father is very strict with you. ---- _____. He never lets off a single mistake of ours
A. So he is B. So is he C. He is so D. So does he
- _____ today, he would get there by Sunday.
A. Would he leave B. Was he leaving C. Were he to leave D. If he leave
- Never in my life ____ such a thing. A. I have heard or have seen
B. have I heard or seen C. I have heard or seen D. did I hear or see
- Here ____! Where is Xiao Liu? ---- There ____.
A. comes the bus, is he B. comes the bus, he is C. the bus comes, is he D. the bus comes, he is
- _____, I will not buy it.
A. Much as do I like it B. As much I like it C. Much as I like it D. As I like it much
- I like football. I don't like volleyball. ---- _____.
A. So do I B. Neither do I C. So it is with me D. So is it with me
- _____ the expense, I _____ to Italy.
A. If it were not, go B. Were it not for, would go
C. Weren't it for, will go D. If it hadn't been, would have gone
- So _____ in the darkness that he didn't dare to move an inch.

- A. he was frightened B. was he frightened C. frightened he was D. frightened was he
- 13.—In modern times, girls like beautiful clothes.
—Yes, _____ and boys. After all, our life has greatly improved.
A. so do they; so do you B. so they do; so you do
C. so do they; so you do D. so they do; so do you
- 14.—You have an English class every day except Sunday. --- _____.
A. So we have B. So we do C. So have we D. So do we
15. I wonder if your wife will go to the ball. If your wife _____, so _____ mine.
A. does; will B. will; does C. will; would D. does; do
16. Only after I read the text over again _____ its main idea.
A. that I knew B. did I know C. I could know D. I did know
- 17.—You seem to have learned all the English words by heart.
A. So I do B. So do I C. So I have D. So have I
18. —I seldom watch TV, but listen to the radio a lot.
A. So do I B. Neither do I C. I'm the same D. So it is with me
19. So excited _____ that he couldn't say a word.
A. he seemed B. did he seem C. was he seeming D. he did look
20. Jimmy was so nervous not a single word _____ down in the dictation.
A. he wrote B. he was written C. did he write D. was he written
21. Little _____ when I took the trip where it would lead me.
A. have I known B. had I known C. do I know D. did I know
22. —Have you ever seen anything like that before? — _____.
A. No, I never have seen anything like that before
B. No, never I have seen anything like that before
C. No, never have I seen anything like that before
D. No, I have seen anything like that before never
23. _____, I would accept the invitation and go to the party.
A. Were I you B. Was I you C. Had I been you D. Would I be you
24. You should work less _____.
A. and neither should I B. and so should I C. and nor should I D. and so I should
25. _____ and caught the mouse.
A. Up the cat jumped B. The cat up jumped C. Up jumped the cat D. Jumped up the cat
26. Not only _____ a promise, but also he kept it.
A. did he make B. he made C. does he make D. has he made
27. His uncle is a worker and has been working in the factory for more than ten years. _____.
A. So is his aunt B. So has his aunt C. So his aunt does D. So it is with his aunt
28. Not once _____ their plan.
A. did they change B. they changed C. changed they D. they did change
- 29.—Do you know Jim quarreled with his brother? —I don't know, and _____.
A. nor don't I care B. nor do I care C. I don't care neither D. I don't care also
30. Not until he arrived home _____ he find that this wallet had been stolen.
A. did B. would C. when D. that
31. —This is one of the oldest trees in the world. — _____ such a big tree.

- A. Never I have seen B. I haven't never seen C. Never have I seen D. I have seen never
32. Nowhere else in the world _____ cheaper tailoring (裁缝业, 成衣业) than in Hong Kong.
A. a tourist can find B. can a tourist find C. a tourist will find D. a tourist has found
33. _____ succeed in doing anything.
A. Only by working hard we can B. By only working hard we can
C. Only we can by working hard D. Only by working hard can we
34. _____ that we all went out, lying in the sun.
A. So fine was the weather B. So was the fine weather
C. The weather was so fine was D. So the weather was fine
35. _____ a nice man _____ that we all believe him.
A. So; did he seem B. So; he seemed C. Such; he seemed D. Such; did he seem
36. —You seem to be an actor. —_____. I have played many parts in a lot of films.
A. So do I B. So am I C. So I do D. So I am
37. Not only _____ working hard, but also _____ very polite.
A. the boy is; he is B. is the boy; he is C. the boy is; is he D. is the boy; is he
38. _____, he never seems able to do the work beautifully.
A. Try as he does B. As he tries C. Try as does he D. As try he does
39. —I cannot see the picture well from here. — _____.
A. Neither can I B. Neither I can C. I can't neither D. Neither can I
40. — You ought to have given them some advice — _____, but who cared what I asked?
A. So ought you B. So I ought C. So it was D. So I did
41. So carelessly _____ that he almost killed himself.
A. he drives B. does he drive C. did he drive D. he drove
42. Little _____ about his own health though he was very ill.
A. he cared B. did he care C. he cares D. does he care
43. Well _____ know him and well _____ know me.
A. I did; he did B. did I; he did C. did I; did he D. I did; did he
44. No sooner _____ they rushed out into the street.
A. did they hear the news than B. did they hear the news when
C. had they heard the news than D. had they heard the news when
45. Little wonder _____ up their hands in dismay.
A. have some thrown B. some have thrown C. thrown some have D. have thrown some
46. _____, he would have passed the exam.
A. If he were to study B. If he studied hard C. Had he studied hard D. Should he study hard
47. We were lucky enough, for no sooner _____ home _____ it rained.
A. we returned; and B. we had returned; when
C. did we return; when D. had we returned; than
48. So little _____ agree on the plan that they could not settle their difference.
A. did they B. do they C. they did D. they did not
49. _____ he realized it was too late to return home.
A. No sooner it grew dark than B. Hardly did it grow dark when
C. It was not until dark that D. It was until dark that

参考答案

语法复习七：倒装句

1~5 BDACA 6~10 CBBCC 11~15 BDDBA 16~20 BADBC 21~25 DCABC
26~30 ADABA 31~35 CBDAD 36~40 DBADD 41~45 CBCCB 46~49 CDAC

语法复习九：动词词义辨析

动词是各类考试的重点，高考试题中，单项填空、完形填空和改错等三项题型中，动词辨义的比重较大，并逐年增加。动词辨义主要指：1、形状相同的动词之间辨义。如：lie, lay; hanged, hung; rise, raise; sit, seat 等。2、意义相近的动词之间辨义。如：borrow, lend; speak, say, talk; hope, wish 等。3、动词与其它词形相近、意义相似的词的辨义。如：advise, advice; cost, worth; pass, past 等。4、意义不同，但容易混淆的动词的辨义。如：explain, say; discover, invent, uncover; find, find out 等。5、某些常用动词的习惯用法的辨义。如：ask, give, call, make, find, get, keep, want, see, hear 等。6、某些常用动词短语的辨义。如：give in, give up, turn on, turn off, turn down, turn up 等。

(一) 易混动词

1、lay (放), lie (躺) 与 lie (说谎)：这三个易混动词构成见下表：

| 中 文 | 原 形 | 过 去 式 | 过去分词 | 现在分词 | 说 明 |
|-----|-----|-------|------|--------|-------|
| 放 | lay | laid | laid | laying | 及物动词 |
| 躺 | lie | lay | lain | lying | 不及物动词 |
| 说谎 | lie | lied | lied | lying | 不及物动词 |

2、rise 和 raise: rise 是不及物动词，其过去式是 rose，过去分词是 risen，而 raise 是及物动词，是规则动词。

3、hear 与 listen to: hear 侧重点是听到，听见什么，而 listen to 是侧重于听的倾向，但 hear 用于无意中的听见，而 listen to 却用于集中注意力的听。

4、see, watch 和 look: see 用作看电影，剧目；watch 则用作看电视比赛，而 watch 还有在旁观看之意。如：Are you going to play or only watch?; look 一般用作不及物动词，只是当盯着某人看时用作及物动词，如：The little boy looked me in the face. (小男孩直盯着我的脸。)

5、wind 和 wound: wind 意为蜿蜒而行，其过去式与过去分词都是 wound，而动词原形 wound 意为伤害，其过去式、过去分词都是 wounded。

6、hang 的用法: hang 有两个意思：一为悬挂，是不规则动词，过去式、过去分词都是 hung; 二为绞刑，是规则动词，其过去式、过去分词都是 hanged。

7、bear 的过去分词 born 与 borne: bear 作为出生讲有两个过去分词 born, borne。只有当 be+born... 短语后没有 by 介词短语时，才可用 born。如：He was born in Shanghai. 而作它用时要用 borne。如：She has borne five children. 但如果作忍受讲，则一律用 borne。

8、sit 与 seat: seat 为及物动词时是作容纳讲，sit 只是表示一动作。seat 如果表示就座时要用 be seated。如：They were seated at their desks. 或用 seat oneself, 比如：I seated myself in the armchair.

9、borrow, lend 与 keep: 借入英文中用 borrow，借出用 lend，但这两个词都是截止性动词或瞬间动词，不能用于长时间的动作，所以我能借多久应用 keep。

10、win 与 beat: win 作胜、赢讲时其后应接，a game, an argument, a battle, a prize, a contest, a race, a bet，但不能接人，如果接人则有另外的含意。如：I have won him. 即我已说服他了，我赢得他的好感。而 beat 是及物动词为击败、胜过讲，直接接人、队。

11、steal 与 rob: steal 为偷。rob 为抢，其用法不同。steal 其后接物+from+某人、某地，而 rob 其后接人+of+抢的物品。

12、fit 与 suit: fit 与 suit 均可作合适讲, 但英文中却用在不同的地方。如 fit 用于尺寸大小的合适, 而 suit 则多用于颜色式样的合适。

13、take, bring 与 fetch: 英文中拿三个词, 即拿来, 拿去, 去取然后回来(即双程)。所以拿来, 带来是 bring, 拿去带走是 take, 而去取回来是 fetch。

14、shut 与 close: shut 与 close 有时是可以互换的, 但有些地方则不可这样做。如:在正式场合多用 close, 而在命令, 态度粗暴的场合则用 shut。如:Shut your mouth!(闭嘴); 又如 :Shut up. 在指铁路、公路交通关闭或停止使用的场合, 则要用 close。

15、answer 与 reply: 作为回答讲 answer 是及物动词, 如作不及物动词, 则意义不同, 如 answer for, 意为向某人或向某事负责。而 reply 作回答讲是不及物动词, 后跟宾语时, 要加上 to。

16、reach, arrive 与 get to: reach 当到达讲是及物动词, 而当延伸和拿得到、拿不到时讲, 则是不及物动词。作到达讲时还有 get to, arrive(at/in)。

17、cost, spend 与 take: 英文中花费有三个词 cost, spend, take, 但各有不同用法。cost 作“花费”讲, 主语不能是人, 而 spend 的主语不能是物。如: she spent all his money on stamps.而 take 作花费讲时, 可用人也可用物做主语。更多的用法是用形式主语 it, 如 It takes me three hours to finish this work.

18、lost, gone 与 missing: 作补足语时意为丢失、不见了, 可以用 lost, gone, 但要用 miss 时则不能用 missed, 而要用 missing。

19、have on, wear, put on 及 dress: 作穿衣服讲的动词分为状态和动作两种。have on 与 wear 作穿着状态讲;但 have on 不用进行时态, 而 wear 则常要用进行时态。put on 是动作, 但 dress 既可用作状态, 又可用作穿衣动作, 但用作状态时要用其过去分词作形容词如:He was dressed in a blue suit 作动作讲时, 其后不要接衣物而要接反身代词或表示人、物的名词, 如:I dress my children in the morning every day.

20、begin 与 start

begin 与 Start 均可作开始讲, 并无多少区别, 同样可接不定式或动名词, 但在下面的场合多要用 Start: 1)机器的开动发动; 2)旅途的开始。如:we should have to start early because there was a lot traffic in the street.

21、allow 与 permit

allow 与 permit 其后直接接动作时要用动名词, 如接人后再接动词则要用不定式, 所以在被动语态时一定要用不定式。如: People are not allowed to spit.

22、find 与 found

find 找到的过去式和过去分词都是 found, 而 found 是动词“建立”的原形, 其过去式和过去分词是 founded, founded, 如: The People's Republic of China was founded in 1949.

23、speak, say, talk 与 tell

英文中讲有 4 个词, speak, say, talk, tell, 但其中 speak, talk 多用作不及物动词, 但 speak 后加语言名词时则用作及物动词, 如: Please speak English. 而 say 与 tell 是及物动词, 其中 tell 常用作接双宾语, 如: Tell me a story. 但也有些特定的习惯用法, 如: 在作讲实话, 讲谎言, 表示时间常用单宾语而不能换其它词, 如: My watch was broken. It couldn't tell time correctly. 在书信、便条、海报上写着英文应为 It said ...。在作辨别不同讲时是 tell, 如: Can you tell me the difference between the two? 而讲别人好坏话时用 speak, 如: The father always speaks well of his son.。

24、excuse me 与 sorry

excuse me 用于来打搅对方前以提醒对方注意的提示语, 而 sorry 则表达因作了某事向对方道歉。

25、care for 与 care to do

care for 其后要接不定式时则要省去 for 或换用名词, 如: Would you care for a cup of tea? 但 care for 作照顾讲时与 look after 相同。

26、与名词易混的动词有: advise(v.), advice (n.); accept(v.), except(preposition.); pass(v.), past(preposition.); bathe(v.), bath(n.); breathe(v.), breath(n.); choose(v.), choice(n.); succeed(v.), success(n.);

27、意义相近的动词: ring 摇铃, 打铃, 电话铃响, strike 专指敲钟, 打几点, 撞击; suggest 提出实验性或推测性的建议, advice 表示对经验不足人的一种忠告; look 由视觉得出的印象, seem 暗示一定根据的判定, appear 外表印象而实际或结果并非如此; stay 停留, 逗留, remain 遗物, 某物被取走一部分后剩余部分; discover (发现) 找到早已存在但未被人所了解的东西, invent (发明) 研制出不存在的东西; remember 记忆起以前经历或知道的事, remind 提醒某人做某事。

28、动词 + 副词 + 介词: catch up with, look forward to, come up with, keep up with, go in for, look down on, get on with ...

29、动词 + 介词 to 的词组有: come to, stick to, object to, agree to, turn to, attend to, belong to, devote to, reply to ...

30、与 in 相结合的动词有: give in, hand in, bring in, drop in, succeed in, take in, check in, engage in, fill in, trade in ...

(二) 动词短语

动词短语是指动词和介词、副词或名词的习惯搭配。有关动词短语的测试点主要涉及结构上选用恰当的搭配词, 不同搭配含意上的辨异及不同短语的辨异。需掌握以下要点:

1、根据动词短语的不同特点, 掌握其运用规律。

(1) 动词+副词(不及物)

Harry turned up after the party when everyone had left. 晚会后, 人们都已离去, 哈里出现了。

(2) 动词+副词(及物)

Please turn every light in the house off. 请把房子里的每一盏灯都关掉。

注意: ①如果宾语较长, 就应避免把副词同动词分开。如: She turned off all the lights which had been left on. 她关掉了所有还在亮着的灯。②如果宾语是人称代词, 只能放在动词和副词之间。如: She gave them away. 她送掉了它们。

(3) 动词+介词(及物)

I'm looking for my glasses. 我在找我的眼镜。

注意: ①当它跟宾语时, 不能把介词放在宾语后面。②动词短语可以放在句子或从句末尾。如: She's got more work than she can cope with. 她的工作多得使她应付不了。

(4) 动词+副词+介词

I look forward to seeing you soon. 我盼望不久就见到你。

注: “动词+介词”、“动词+名词+副词”、“动词+副词+介词”, 这三种搭配都是及物的, 如变成被动语态, 不可漏掉介词。In this way both grain and vegetable can be well looked after. (不能漏掉 after) 这样一来, 粮食和蔬菜都能兼顾了。

2、熟悉同一动词和不同介词或副词、不同的动词和同一介词或同一副词搭配在意义上的差异。

(1)同一动词和不同介词搭配时，意义上的差异。如：①hear from 收到…的来信，hear of 听说。②look after 照料，look at 看，look for 寻找。

(2)同一动词和不同副词搭配时，意义上的差异。如：①ring back 回电话，ring off 挂断电话，ring up 打电话 ②put away 放好，put on 穿，上演，put up 挂起，举起。

(3)不同动词和同一介词搭配时，在意义上的差异。如：look for 寻找，call for 去取(某物)，去接(某人)，ask for 请求，wait for 等候，send for 派人去叫。

(4)不同动词和同一副词搭配时，在意义上的差异。如：①break out 发生，爆炸，carry out 进行，开展，go out 熄灭，hand out 分发，let out 放出，look out 当心，sell out 卖完，set out 出发，take out 取出，work out 算出。②break down 出毛病，come down 落下来，get down 下车，take down 取下，write down 写下。

练习、动词词义辨析

1.I can hardly ____ the difference between the two words.

- A. point B.speak C.say D.tell

2.I ____ you will write me back soon.

- A. wish B.hope C.want D.need

3.I asked him to ____ me a few minutes so that I could have a word with him.

- A. spend B. spare C.save D. share

4. Father will not ____ us to touch anything in his room when he is away.

- A. have B.let C. agree D. allow

5.I learned to ____ a bicycle as a small boy.

- A. ride B. drive C. operate D.run

6.I can ____ you to the railway station in my car.

- A. send B.pick C.ride D.take

7.If no one ____ the phone at home, ring me at work.

- A. answers B. returns C. replies D. receives

8.I don't know the restaurant, but it's ____ to be quite a good one.

- A.said B.told C.spoken D.talked

9. These boxes are too heavy for your mother, you'd better ____ them for her.

- A. bring B. carry C.take D. fetch

10. There was a fight in the street yesterday. Three people were seriously ____.

- A. hurt B. killed C. broken D.cut

11. Careless driving ____ a lot of highway accidents.

- A. affects B. gives C. causes D. results

12. I've ____ my umbrella in the office and I'll have to fetch it.

- A. forgot B.left C. remained D.lost

13 .The doctor says a few days' rest in a quiet place will ____ you a lot of good.

- A. make B.do C.give D.get
14. His heart _____fast when the teacher asked him a difficult question.
A. beat B.hit C. jumped D.ran
15. The cooking chicken _____ very good.
A. smells B. feels C. sounds D. tastes
16. Most children stay at home until they _____ school age.
A. get B.come C. reach D. arrive
17. A single mistake here could _____ you your life.
A. pay B.take C. spend D.cost
18. The boy works hard. I _____him to succeed in the exam.
A. like B. expect C. think D.need
19. We _____ each other the best of luck in the examination.
A. hoped B. wanted C. expected D. wished
20. I'm afraid Mr Brown isn't in. Would you like to _____a message?
A.give B.leave C.carry D.take
21. Do you know the girl _____ a red coat?
A. dressed in B. had on C. wore D. put on
22. The assistant suggested Mary _____ the blue skirt.
A. buying B. bought C. to buy D. could buy
23. Our teacher suggested Wang Lin _____ to America for further study.
A. should send B. would be sent C. sending D.be sent
24. Old Mr Jackson insisted _____ to the Friendship Hospital.
A. on being sent B. to send C. on sending D. being sent
25. The father insisted that their son Tom _____ clever enough to study music.
A. be B. should be C.was D. would be
- 26.I _____ the television set for 1,500 yuan.
A. bought B.paid C.cost D. spent
- 27.I _____ play football than basketball.
A. would rather B. had better C. like better D. prefer
28. - What are you doing? - I'm looking _____the children. They should be back for lunch now.
A.after B.at C.for D.up
29. The sports meet will be _____ till next week because of the bad weather.
A. put off B. put away C. put up D. put down
- 30.I really don't want to go to the party, but I don't see how I can _____ it.
A. get back from B. get out of C. get away D. get off
31. Readers can _____ quite well without knowing the exact meaning of each word.
A. get over B. get in C; get along D. get through
32. Many foreigners _____ the Great Wall as the World's Seventh Wonder.
A. look at B. look for C. look around D. look on

33. I can't hear clearly. Please _____ the radio _____ a little.
 A. turn; on B. turn; off C. turn; down D. turn; up
34. Thirty people were expected, but only twenty - four _____.
 A. turned in B. turned up C. turned to D. turn up
35. The child is running a high fever. We must _____ a doctor at once.
 A. send in B. send out C. send for D. send up
36. I'm going to a pop concert with Tom. He'll _____ me at eight and we'll go there together;
 A. call for B. call in C. call on D. call up
37. It is often easier to make plans than it is to _____.
 A. carry on them B. carry out them C. carry them on D. carry them out
38. Your composition must be _____ after class.
 A. handed to B. handed out C. handed in D. handed over
39. A new school was _____ in the village last year.
 A. held up B. set up C. sent up D. brought up
40. - When did the plane _____? - At 2 o'clock.
 A. take off B. take up C. take away D. take place
41. _____! There's danger ahead.
 A. Look at B. Look up C. Look on D. Look out
42. Let's _____ to clean the house. It's too dirty.
 A. set about B. set out C. set off D. set down
43. I used to _____ my teacher when I was in Beijing.
 A. call in B. call at C. call for D. call on
44. He _____ from his family and settled down in America.
 A. broke away B. broke out C. broke up D. broke in
45. He had to _____ his father's business after his death, though he didn't really want to continue it.
 A. carry out B. pick up C. set up D. carry on
46. The robbers had no trouble in _____ the bank, but when they came out, the police were waiting for them.
 A. breaking out B. breaking into C. breaking up D. breaking away from
47. Autumn is coming. The farmers are busy _____ the crops in the fields.
 A. moving in B. sharing in C. handing in D. getting in
48. All the students _____ their holidays to take part in planting trees.
 A. gave out B. gave in C. gave up D. gave away
49. He was always the last to leave in order to clean up the workroom and _____ the tools.
 A. put away B. take away C. push aside D. look after
50. _____ this article and tell me what you think of it.
 A. Look up B. Look on C. Look into D. Look through

参考答案

语法复习九：动词词义辨析

1~5 DBBDA 6~10 CAABA 11~15 CBBAA 16~20 CDBDB 21~25 AADAC
26~30 AACAB 31~35 CDCBC 36~40 ADCBA 41~45 DBDAD 46~50 BDCAD

语法复习十：动词的语气——虚拟语气

一、语气的定义和种类

1、语气：语气是动词的一种形式，它表示说话人对某一行为或事情的看法和态度。

2、语气的种类：

(1)陈述语气：表示动作或状态是现实的、确定的或符合事实的，用于陈述句、疑问句和某些感叹句。如：We are not ready. 我们没准备好。What a fine day it is!多好的天气啊!

(2)祈使语气：表示说话人的建议、请求、邀请、命令等。如：Open the door, please. 请开门。

(3)虚拟语气：表示动作或状态不是客观存在的事实，而是说话人的主观愿望、假设或推测等。如：If I were you, I should study English. 如果我是你，我就学英语了。May you succeed! 祝您成功!

二、虚拟语气在条件从句中的用法

条件句有两类，一类是真实条件句，一类是虚拟条件句。如果假设的情况是有可能发生的，就是真实条件句。在这种真实条件句中的谓语用陈述语气。如：If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go to the park. 如果明天不下雨，我们就去公园。

如果假设的情况是过去或现在都不存在的，或将来不大可能发生的，则是虚拟条件句。如：If he had seen you yesterday, he would have asked you about it. 如果他昨天见到你，他会问你这件事的。(事实上他昨天没见到你，因此也未能问你这件事。)

在含有虚拟条件句的复合句中，主句和从句的谓语都要用虚拟语气。现将虚拟条件从句和主句的动词形式列表如下：

| | 从 句 | 主 句 |
|---------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 与现在事实相反 | 动词的过去式 (be的过去式一般用were) | would/ should/ could/ might + 动词原形 |
| 与过去事实相反 | had + 过去分词 | would/ should/ could/ might + have + 过去分词 |
| 与将来事实相反 | 动词过去式, should + 动词原形, were to + 动词原形 | would/ should/ could/ might + 动词原形 |

注：主句中的should只用于I、we，但在美国英语中，should常被would代替；从句中的should可用于各种人称。

1、表示与现在事实相反的假设和结果。如：If my brother were here, everything would be all right. 要是我哥哥在这儿，一切都没问题了。

2、表示与过去事实相反的假设和结果。如：If you had taken my advice, you wouldn't (couldn't) have failed in the exam. 如果你按照我的建议去做，你一定不会(不可能)考试不及格。

3、表示与将来事实可能相反的假设和结果。如：If it were Sunday tomorrow, I should

(would, could, might) go to see my grandmother. 如果明天是星期天, 我就 (可能)去看望我奶奶。If it were to snow this evening, they would not go out. 如果今晚下雪, 他们将不出去了。

4、有时条件从句中的动作和主句中的动作发生的时间不一致 (表示错综时间的虚拟语气), 这时动词的形式要根据它所表示的时间加以调整。例如: If you had listened to the doctor, you would be all right now. 如果你当初听了医生的话, 身体现在就好了。(从句动作指过去, 主句动作指现在)

5、虚拟条件句可以转换成下列形式:

(1)省略连词if。在书面语中, 如果虚拟条件从句中有were, had 或 should, 可以把if省略, 把这几个词放到主语之前, 构成主谓倒装。例如: Should he come (If he should come), tell him to ring me up. 他要是来了, 让他给我打个电话。Were I you (If I were you), I would not do it. 我要是你, 就不做这事。

(2)用介词短语代替条件状语从句。有时假设的情况并不用条件从句表示出来, 而是通过介词短语来表示。如: Without air (If there were not air), there would be no living things. 如果没有空气的话, 就不会有生物了。But for your help (If it hadn't been for your help) I couldn't have done it. 要是没有你的帮助, 我就不可能完成这件事。

假设的情况有时可以通过上下文或其他方式表现出来。如: I was busy that day. Otherwise I would have gone there with them. (If I hadn't been busy that day, I would have gone there with them.) 我那天很忙, 否则, 我就和他们一起去那儿了。(如果我那天不忙的话, 我就……); I would have finished the work, but I have been ill. (If I hadn't been ill, I would have finished the work.) 我本来该完成这项工作的, 但我生病了。(如果我没生病的话, 我就会完成……)

6、省去条件从句或主句: 表示虚拟语气的主句或从句有时可以省略, 但其含义仍可以推知。

(1)省去条件从句。如: You could have washed your clothes yourself. 你本可以自己洗衣服的。省去了"If you had wanted to"(事实是:你自己没洗衣服, 因为你不想洗。)

(2)省去主句(常用以表示愿望)。如: If my grandmother were with me! 如果我的祖母与我在一起多好啊!(事实是:祖母已不在世。); If only she had not left! 如果她没走就好了!(事实是:她已经走了。)

三、虚拟语气的其他用法

1、虚拟语气在主语从句中的用法: 在"It is important (strange, natural, necessary)that..."这类句型里, that所引导的主语从句中的谓语动词常用 "should+动词原形"结构, 表示某事是"重要"、"奇怪"、"自然"、"必要"等意义。如: It is important that every member (should) inform himself of these rules. 重要的是每个成员知道这些规则。

2、虚拟语气在宾语从句中用法:

(1)在动词wish后的宾语从句中, 表示与现在或过去的事实相反, 或对将来的主观愿望, 从句通常省略连词that。1)表示对现在情况的虚拟: 从句动词用过去式或过去进行式(be动词一般用

were)。如: I wish I knew the answer to the question. 我希望知道这个问题的答案。(可惜不知道); 2) **表示对过去情况的虚拟**: 从句动词常用"had+过去分词"。如: I wish (wished) I hadn't spent so much money. 我后悔不该花那么多钱。(实际上已经花掉); 3) **表示对将来的主观愿望**: 谓语动词形式为"would+动词原形"。此时要注意, 主句的主语与从句的主语不能相同, 因为主句的主语所期望的从句动作能否实现, 取决于从句主语的态度或意愿(非动物名词除外)。如: I wish it would stop raining. 但愿雨能停止; I wish you would come soon. 但愿你立刻来。

(2)在suggest, demand, order, propose, insist, command, request, desire等动词后的宾语从句中, 谓语动词用“should + 动词原形”, 表示建议、要求、命令等。如: I demand that he (should) answer me immediately. 我要求他立刻答复我。

3、虚拟语气在状语从句中的用法

(1)在带有even if/ even though引导的让步状语从句的主从复合句中, 主句和从句都用虚拟语气, 动词形式与含有非真实条件句的虚拟语气相同。如: Even if he had been ill, he would have gone to his office. 即使生了病, 他俩去办公室。

(2)由as if或as though引导的状语从句表示比较或方式时。从句谓语形式为动词的过去式(be用were)或“had+过去分词”。如: He treated me as if I were a stranger. 他那样对待我, 好像我是陌生人似的。She talked about the film as if she had really seen it. 她谈论那部影片, 就好像她确实看过一样。

注:如果表示的事情可能会发生, 那么方式状语从句中的谓语动词可用陈述语气。

(3)在in order that或so that引导的目的状语从句中, 谓语动词多用“could或might (有时也用should) + 动词原形”。如: Mr Green spoke slowly so that his students could (might) hear clearly. 格林先生说得很慢, 好让学生听清楚。

4、虚拟语气在定语从句中的用法: 在"It is time (that) ..."句型中, 定语从句的谓语动词常用虚拟语气表示将来, 动词形式一般用过去式, 意思是"该干某事的时候了"。如: It's (high) time we did our homework. 我们该做作业了。

5、虚拟语气在简单句中的用法

(1)情态动词的过去式用于现在时态时, 表示说话人的谦虚、客气、有礼貌, 或委婉的语气, 常见于日常会话中。如: It would be better for you not to stay up too late. 你最好别太晚睡觉。

(2)在一些习惯表达中。如: I would rather not tell you. 我宁愿不告诉你。

(3)用“may + 动词原形”表示"祝愿"、“但愿”, 此时 may 须置于句首(多用于正式文体中)。

如: May you be happy!祝你快乐! May good luck be yours.祝你顺利。

练习、虚拟语气

1. If I _____ where he lived, I _____ a note to him.
A. knew, would
B. had known, would have sent
C. know, would send
D. knew, would have sent
2. If they _____ earlier than expected, they _____ here now.
A. had started, would be
B. started, might be
C. had started, would have been
D. will start, might have been
3. I didn't know his telephone number. _____ it, I _____ then.
A. Had I known, would ring him up
B. Should I know, would have rung him up
C. If I knew; would ring him up
D. Had I known; would have rung him up
4. Mary is ill today. If she _____, she _____ absent from school.
A. were not ill; wouldn't be
B. had been ill; wouldn't have been
C. had been ill; should have been
D. hadn't been ill; could be
5. Were I to do it, I _____ it some other way.
A. will do
B. would do
C. would have done
D. were to do
6. I _____ him the answer _____ possible, but I was so busy then.
A. could tell; if it had been
B. must have told; were it
C. should have told; had it been
D. should have told; should it be
7. Without your help, we _____ so much.
A. won't achieve
B. didn't achieve
C. don't achieve
D. wouldn't have achieved
8. You didn't take his advice. _____ his advice, you _____ such a mistake.
A. Had you taken; wouldn't have made
B. If you had taken; would make
C. Were you to take; shouldn't have made
D. Have you taken; won't have made
9. We wish we _____ what you did when we were at high school.
A. did
B. could have done
C. have done
D. should do
10. She wishes she _____ to the theatre last night.
A. went
B. would go
C. had gone
D. were going
11. Tom is very short now. His mother wishes that he _____ be tall when he grows up.
A. could
B. should
C. would
D. were able to
12. My sister advised me that I _____ accept the invitation.
A. could
B. must
C. should
D. might
13. He asks that he _____ an opportunity to explain why he's refused to go there.
A. is given
B. must give
C. should give
D. be given

14. Do you think of Wang Fang's suggestion that he _____ Mr. Li to the party?
A. will invite B. have invited C. is invited D. invite
15. I insisted that he _____ at once.
A. be gone B. go C. would go D. might go
16. Li Ming insisted that he _____ anything at all.
A. hadn ' t stolen B. shouldn ' t steal C. doesn ' t steal D. steal
17. It is quite natural that my coming late again _____ them very angry.
A. had made B. would make C. makes D. make
18. He acted as if he _____ everything in the world.
A. knew B. knows C. has known D. won't know
19. Read it aloud so that I _____ you clearly.
A. may hear B. will hear C. hear D. have heard
20. They got up early in order that they _____ they first train.
A. caught B. will catch C. might catch D. shall catch
21. I am sorry that he _____ in such poor health.
A. are B. shall be C. were D. should be
22. That is a good book. You _____ it yesterday.
A. could buy B. should buy C. should have bought D. bought
23. It is high time we _____ home.
A. will go B. would go C. have gone D. went
24. I ' d rather that you _____ home.
A. went B. have gone C. will go D. had gone
25. If only I _____ to the lecture!
A. listen B. will listen C. am listening D. had listened
26. ---- If he _____ , he _____ that food. ---- Luckily he was sent to the hospital immediately.
A. was warned; would not take B. had been warned; would not have taken
C. would be warned; had not taken D. would have been warned; had not taken
27. I didn ' t see your sister at the meeting. If she _____ , she would have met my brother.
A. has come B. did come C. came D. had come
28. Without electricity, human life _____ quite different today.
A. is B. will be C. would have been D. would be
29. He _____ you more help, even though he was very busy.
A. might have given B. might give C. may have given D. may give
30. If city noises _____ from increasing, people _____ shout to be heard even at the dinner table

20 years from now.

A. are not kept; will have to

B. are not kept; have to

C. do not keep; will have to

D. do not keep; have to

31. Mike's father, as well as his mother, insisted that he _____ home.

A. stayed

B. could stay

C. has stayed

D. stay

32. Mr. Smith insisted that he _____ the work all.

A. had done

B. have done

C. did

D. so

33. Jane would never have gone to the party _____ that Mary would come to see her.

A. has she known

B. had she known

C. if she know

D. if she has known

34. If you had enough money, what _____ ?

A. will you buy

B. would you buy

C. would you have bought

D. will you have bought

35. If you _____ that film late last night, you wouldn't be so sleepy.

A. didn't see

B. haven't seen

C. wouldn't have seen

D. hadn't seen

36. Our monitor requested that _____.

A. all the class studied more carefully the problem

B. the problem was more carefully studied

C. with great care the problem could be studied

D. all the class study the problem more carefully

37. ---- Would you have called her up had it been possible?

---- Yes, but I _____. busy doing my homework..

A. was

B. were

C. had been

D. would be

38. His tired face suggested that he _____ really tired after the long walk.

A. had been

B. was

C. be

D. should be

39. It is important that we _____.

A. shall close the window before we leave

B. will close the window before we leave

C. must close the window before we leave

D. close the window before we leave

40. I didn't know his telephone number, otherwise I _____ him.

A. had telephoned

B. would telephone

C. would have telephoned

D. telephone

语法复习十：动词的语气——虚拟语气

1~5 BADAB 6~10 CDABC 11~15 CCDDDB 16~20 ADAAC 21~25 DCDAD

26~30 BDDAA 31~35 DABBD 36~40 DABDC

语法复习十一：助动词与情态动词

(一) 助动词有 be, have, do, will, shall。它们本身没有词义，只和实义动词的一定形式构成复合谓语，用来表示时态和语态，构成否定、疑问及加强语气等。

1、be (am, is, are, were, been)

(1) “be + -ing” 构成进行时态；(2) “be + 过去分词” 构成被动语态；(3) “be + 动词不定式” 构成复合谓语：①表示按计划安排要发生的事。The prime minister is to visit Japan next year. 总理将于明年访问日本。② 用于命令。You're to do your homework before you watch TV. 你得做完了作业才能看电视。

2、have (has, had)

(1) “have+过去分词” 构成完成时态。如：Have you seen the film ? (2) “have been + -ing” 构成完成进行时态。如：What have you been doing these days? 这些日子你一直在干什么？

3、do (does, did)

(1) “do not + 动词原形” 构成行为动词的否定式。如：His brother doesn't like playing basket. ; (2) “Do + 主语 + 动词原形” 构成行为动词的一般疑问句。Does he go to school by bike every day? (3) “do + 动词原形” 用于祈使句或陈述句中表示加强语气。如：I did go to see him, but he wasn't in 我确实去看望他了，但他不在家。Do do some work. 请一定做点什么；(4) 代替前面刚出现的动词以避免重复。My mother told me to go to bed early. So I did.

4. will, shall (would, should)

“will (shall+动词原形” 构成一般将来时，一般来说 shall 用于第一人称，will 用于第二人称或第三人称，口语中常用 will 代替 shall，如：We will have a meeting to discuss the problem.

(二) 情态动词

情态动词表示说话人对某一动作或状态的态度，可以表示“可能”、“可以”、“需要”、“必须”或“应当”等之意。情态动词没有人称和数的变化。但不能单独作谓语动词用，必须和不带 to 的不定式连用构成谓语动词。只有情态动词 ought 要和带 to 的动词不定式连用，在句中作谓语用。

将情态动词置于主语之前即构成其疑问式，在情态动词之后加 not 既构成其否定式。现将各情态动词的基本用法分述如下：

1、can 和 could (could 为 can 的过去式) 的基本用法

(1) 表示能力，如：He can speak English better than you. (2) 在疑问句和否定句中表示“怀疑”、“猜测”或“可能性”，如：Can this green bike be Liu Dong's? (3) 表示“许可”时 can 可以和 may 换用，如：You can (may) go home now. (4) 如果要表示语气婉转，可用 could 代替 can，这时 could 不再是 can 的过去式，如：Could you come again tomorrow? (5) can 和 be able to 都可表示能力，两者在意思上没有什么区别。但是 can 只能有现在式和过去式，而 be able to 则有更多的形式，如：He will be able to do the work better.

2、may 和 might (might 为 may 的过去式) 的基本用法

(1)表示允许或征询对方许可，有“可以”之意，如：You may use my dictionary. 在回答对方说“可以做某事”或“不可以做某事”时，一般多不用 may 或 may not，以避免语气生硬或不客气。而用比较婉转的说法进行回答。如：--- May I use this dictionary? --- Yes, please. 或 --- Certainly. 在请求对方许可时，如果 Might I...? 就比用 May I...? 语气更婉转些，如：May I have a look at your new computer? 但是表示“阻止”或“禁止”对方做某事时，要用 must not 代替 may not，如：--- May we swim in this lake? --- No, you mustn't. It's too dangerous. (2)may 或 might 都可以表示可能性，表示“或许”、“可能”之意，如果用 might 表示可能性，则语气更加不肯定，如：They may (might) be in the library now .

3、must 的基本用法

(1)must 表示“必须”、“应该”之意，其否定式 must not，缩写形式为 mustn't，表示“不应该”，“不准”、“不许可”或“禁止”之意，如：We must study hard and make progress every day. You mustn't touch the fire. (2)对以 must 提出的疑问句，如作否定回答时，要用 needn't 或用 don't (doesn't) have to (不 必)来回答，而不用 mustn't，因为 mustn't 表示的是“禁止”或“不许可”之意，如：--- Must we finish the work tomorrow? --- No, you needn't (don't have to), but you must finish it in three days. (3)在肯定句中 must 可以表示推测，表示“一定”或“必定”之意，如：--- Whose new bike can it be? --- It must be Liu Dong's. I know his father has just bought him a new one.

4、can, could, may, must 后接完成式的用法

(1)can, could 后接完成式的用法：①在否定句或疑问句中表示对过去发生过的事情的“怀疑”或“不肯定”的态度，Could he have said so? ②在肯定句中，可以表示过去可能做到而实际并没做到的事情，有“劝告”或“责备”的语气。如：--- When did you answer her letter? --- Only yesterday. --- It's too late. You could have answered it earlier, I am sure. (2)may, might 后接完成式的用法 ①表示对过去某事的推测，认为某一件事情在过去可能发生了。如果使用 might，语气就比较婉转或更加不肯定，如：Mary might have learned some Chinese before. ②可以表示过去本来可以做到而实际没有做到的事情，有“劝告”或“责备”的语气，如：You didn't do the work well that day. You might have done it better. (3)must 后接完成式的用法：表示对过去某事的推测，认为某事在过去一定做到了，如：Liu Dong isn't in the classroom. He must have gone to the library.

5、have to 的基本用法：have to 和 must 的意义相近，只是 must 侧重表示说话人的主观看法，而 have to 则表示客观需要，如：I must study hard. I had to give it up because of illness.

6、ought to 的基本用法

(1)表示根据某种义务或必要“应当”做某事，语气比 should 强，例如：Everyone ought to obey the traffic regulations. (2)表示推测，注意与 must 表示推测时的区别：He must be home by now .(断定他已到家), He ought to be home by now .(不十分肯定), This is where the oil must be.(比较直率) , This is where the oil ought to be. (比较含蓄) ; (3)“ought + have+ 过去分词”表示过去应做某事而实际未做。例如：You ought to have helped him. (but you didn't) 这时，ought 与 should 可以互相换用。注意，在美国英语中 ought to 用于否定和疑问句时 to 可以省略。例如：Ought you smoke so

much? You oughtn't smoke so much.

7、dare 的基本用法

(1)dare (dared 为其过去式) 作情态动词用时，主要用于否定句，疑问句和条件从句中，如：Dared he break the traffic regulations again? (2)在现代英语中 dare 常用作行为动词，其变化与一般行为动词相同，如：She dares to stay at home alone at night.

8、need 的基本用法

(1)need 作情态动词用时，主要用于否定句和疑问句中，如：He needn't worry about us now. (2)need 也可作为行为动词用，可用于肯定句，否定句和疑问句中，其后可接名词、代词、动名词或带 to 的动词不定式为其宾语。如：You need to practise reading aloud every day. (3)needn't 后接完成式可以表示过去做了一件本来不必要做的事情，如：--- Did you answer the letter yesterday? --- Yes, I did. --- But you needn't have answered it.

9、shall 的基本用法

(1)shall 用作情态动词时，用于第二、三人称，表示说话人的意愿，可表示“命令”、“警告”、“强制”、“威胁”或“允诺”等意，如：He shall go first, whether he wants to or not. (2)在疑问句中，shall 用于第一、三人称，表示说话人的征询对方意见或请求指示，如：Shall I open the door?

10、should 的基本用法

(1)should 作为情态动词可以表示“建议”或“劝告”，有“应该”之意，如：You should learn from each other. (2)should 后接完成式表示过去没有做到本来应该做的事情，或是做了本来不应该做的事情。如：You should have given him more help.

11、will 的基本用法

(1)用于各人称，可以表示“意志”或“决心”，如：I have told him again and again to stop smoking, but he will not listen. (2)在疑问句中用于第二人称，表示说话人向对方提出请求或询问对方的意愿，如：Will you please tell me how to get to the Capital Gymnasium? (3)will 可以表示一种习惯性的动作，有“总是”或“会要”之意，如：Every morning he will have a walk along this river.

12、would 的基本用法

(1)would 作为 will 的过去式，可用于各人称，表示过去时间的“意志”或“决心”，如：He promised he would never smoke again. (2)在疑问句中，用于第二人称，表示说话人向对方提出请求或许问对方的意愿时，比用 will 的语气更加婉转，如：Would you like some more coffee? (3)在日常生活中，学用“I would like to...”表示“我想要”或“我愿意”之意，以使语气婉转，如：I would like to do Ex.2 first. (4)would 可以表示过去的习惯动作，比 used to 正式，并没有“现已无此习惯”的含义。如：Last year our English teacher would sometimes tell us stories in English after class. / During the vacation he would visit me every week. (5)表示料想或猜想，如：It would be about ten when he left home. / What would she be doing there? / I thought he would have told you about it.

13、used to, had better, would rather 的用法

(1)used to 表示过去的习惯动作或状态，现在已不存在，在间接引语中，其形式可不变，例

如: He told us he used to play foot ball when he was young. 在疑问句、否定句、否定疑问句或强调句中, 可有两种形式。疑问句: Did you use to/ Used you to go to the same school as your brother? 否定句: I usedn't to / didn't use to go there. (usedn't 也可写作 usen't); 否定疑问句: Usen't you to/ Didn't you use to be interested in the theatre? 强调句: I certainly used to/ did use to smoke, but it was a long time ago.; 其反意疑问句或简略回答中, 也有两种形式: She used to be very fat. didn't she?/ use(d)n't she? Did you use to play chess? Yes, I did./ Used you to get up early in the morning? Yes, I did./ used to. (2)had better 意为“最好”, 后接不带 to 的不定式, 例如: ---- We had better go now . ---- Yes, we had (we'd better/ we had better)./ Hadn't we better stop now? (Had we better not stop now?)/ I think I'd better be going. (用于进行时态, 表“最好立即”)/ You had better have done that (用于完成时态, 表未完成动作) 注: had better 用于同辈或小辈, 对长辈不可用。(3)would rather 意为“宁愿”, 表选择, 后接不带 to 的不定式, 例如: I'd rather not say anything./ Would you rather work on a farm?/ ---- Wouldn't you rather stay here? ---- No, I would not. I'd rather go there. 由于 would rather 表选择, 因 而后可接 than, 例如: I would rather work on a farm than in a factory. / I would rather watch TV than go to see the film/ I would rather lose a dozen cherry trees than that you should tell me one lie./ I'd rather you didn't talk about this to anyone. (句中的 'd rather 不是情态动词, would 在此是表愿望的实义动词)

练习、助动词与情态动词

- If they _____ to do this work, he might do it some other way.
A. were B. should C. will D. can
- I was told yesterday that the company _____ me to Rome next week for a business conference.
A. should have sent B. were going to send C. should be sending D. should send
- Let's take a walk, _____? A. will we B. don't we C. do we D. shall we
- He was a good swimmer so he _____ swim to the river bank when the boat sank.
A. could B. might C. should D. was able to
- I went to the doctor's yesterday, I had to wait for half an hour before he _____ see me.
A. can B. may C. might D. could
- _____ this book be yours? ---- No, it _____ not be mine. It _____ be his.
A. Can, must, may B. May, might, must C. Can, may, must D. Must, can, may
- "We didn't see him at the lecture yesterday. " "He _____ it. "
A. mustn't attend B. can't have attended C. would have not attended D. needed have attended
- They _____ the plane, or perhaps they have been prevented from coming for some reason.
A. can have missed B. may have missed C. can have lost D. may have lost
- Since the ground is white, it _____ last night.

- A. had snowed B. must have snowed C. must be snowing D. must have been snowing
10. You must be fifty, _____?
- A. mustn't you B. needn't you C. aren't you D. mnyn't you
11. You must have seen him off yesterday, _____?
- A. haven't you B. didn't you C. mustn't you D. needn't you
12. ---- That must be a mistake. ---- No .it _____ be.
- A. can't B. isn't able to C. can D. was able to
13. He had known the matter before you told him, so you _____ have told it to him.
- A. mustn't B. can't C. needn't D. shouldn't
14. How _____ so?
- A. dare you to say B. dare you say C. do you dare say D. dare to say
15. You are their teacher. You _____ care of them.
- A. should to take B. might to take C. ought to take D. need to take
16. She is studying medical science now but she _____ a lawyer.
- A. used to be B. would be C. were D. had been
17. If you were in an English-speaking country, you, too, _____ English every day.
- A. will be used to speak B. will be used to speaking
- C. must be used to speak D. would be used to speaking
18. I did not call to make my airline reservation (预订) but I _____.
- A. should have B. may have C. must have D. shall have
19. As a girl, she _____ get up at six every day.
- A. would B. will C. might D. should
20. Don't you remember that we _____ to the cinema tonight?
- A. would go B. go C. are going D. will be gone
21. ---- Shall I tell John about it? ---- No, you _____. I've told him already.
- A. needn't B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. shouldn't
22. "Would you mind if I open the window?" "_____".
- A. I don't like it B. Yes .please C. No, please D. No. I'm sorry
23. "Would you tell me something about the affair?" "_____".
- A. Yes .please B. All right C. Not at all D. I do
24. M: _____?

T: I'd love to, but I'm afraid I have no time."

M: Oh, no. You'll surely come over.

T: It's very nice of you. But I'm sorry I have to go to a meeting.

A. Do you have lunch out in a restaurant B. Shall I have you with me at my birthday

参考答案:

语法复习十一: 助动词与情态动词

1~5 ABDDD 6~10 CBBBC 11~15 BACBC 16~20 ADAAC 21~25 ACBBB
26~30 ABBCC 31~35 DDBAB 36~40 ADBAA

语法复习十二：非谓语动词（一）——动词不定式

动词不定式、分词(现在分词, 过去分词)和动名词统称为非谓语动词。现代英语将现在分词和动名词合为一大类叫作 $v + ing$ 形式。这些动词的形式不能在句中单独作谓语用, 因而没有语法主语。但可以有逻辑主语。由于没有语法主语, 也就不受人称和数的限定, 因为不是谓语, 也就没有时态和语态, 但这些词仍能表示动作和状态, 所以仍有表示与其他动词相对时间关系的形式。由于与其它词有逻辑上的主谓关系, 因此也有表示主、被动的形式, 同时也有自己的宾语和状语, 一起构成非谓语动词的短语(动词不定式短语, 分词短语, 动名词短语)。非谓语动词在英语语法中占有特殊且重要的位置。非谓语动词形式多样, 应用广泛, 且在句中起着很活跃的作用, 也是语法项目中的重点和难点, 学好非谓语动词, 才能正确进行口语和书面的交流。

动词不定式、过去分词及 $v-ing$ 形式在句中均不能作谓语用, 所以叫做非谓语动词。

(一) 动词不定式:

动词不定式由“to+ 动词原形”构成, 如: to study, to play, 动词不定式虽然不能作谓语动词用, 但仍留着动词的特征, 它可以带有所需要的宾语或状语而构成动词不定式短语, 如: to study hard, to play table tennis.

1、动词不定式的形式变化: 动词不定式有下列时态和语态的形式变化。

| 语态式 | 一般式 | 完成式 | 进行式 | 完成进行式 |
|-----|-------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| 主 动 | to build | to have built | to be building | to have been building |
| 被 动 | to be build | to have been build | | |

2、动词不定式的基本用法: 动词不定式能起名词、形容词和副词的作用, 可在句中作主语、表语、宾语补足语、定语和状语用, 如:

(1) 作主语: To help each other is good. (动词不定式作主语时, 一般可用 it 作形式主语, 而将作主语的动词不定式置于句末, 如: It is good to help each other.

(2) 作表语: My job is to drive them to the power station every day. 动词不定式在系动词 be 之后作表语, 与表示将来时的 be + 动词不定式结构有所区别, 如: Our plan is to set up another middle school for the peasants' children. 我们的计划是给农民子弟再成立一所中学。(句中的谓语动词为 is, 动词不定式 to set up... 为表语, 主语为 plan, 但 plan 并不是动词不定式的逻辑主语, 即动词不定式 to set up 所表示的动作不是主语 plan 产生的。) We are to set up another middle school for the peasants' children. 我们将为农民的子弟再成立一所中学。(句中的 are to set up 整个结构为句中谓语, 主语为 we, 同时也是动词不定式 to set up 所表示的动作用的逻辑主语, 即动词不定式 to set up 所表示的动作是由 we 产生的)。

(3) 作宾语: ①作及物动词的宾语, 如: She wishes to be a musician.; ②作某些形容词的宾语: 可以有动词不定式为宾语的形容词一般有 glad, sorry, afraid, pleased, determined, willing, eager, anxious, ready, sure 等, 如: I am determined to give up smoking.; ③动词不定式一般不作介词的宾语, 但动词不定式之前如有疑问词时, 就可作介词的宾语, 如: Can you give us some advice on what to do next?

(4) 作宾语补足语, 如: Tell the children not to play on the street. 如果句中的谓语动词为 see, hear, watch, notice, have, make, let 等, 作宾语补足语的动词不定式须将 to 省去, 如: I saw a little girl run across the street.

(5) 动词不定式在句中作宾语, 如带有宾语补足语时, 须先用 it 作形式宾语, 而将该动词不定式后置, 如: I don't think it right to do it that way.

(6) 作定语: 动词不定式作定语时, 须位于被其修饰的名词或代词之后, 如: Is this the best way to help him? 和定语用的动词不定式如果是不及物动词, 不定式后面就要用必要的介词, 如: He is the man to depend on. 如果被不定式修饰的名词为 place, time, way, 不定式后面的介词, 习惯上可以省去, 如: The old man is looking for a quiet place to live.

(7) 作状语: 动词不定式可以作下列的状语: ①目的状语: Every morning he gets up very early to read English. 为了强调不定式表示目的的作用, 可在不定式前加 in order to 或 so as to (以便或为了), 但应注意 in order to 位于句首或句中均可, 而 so as to 不能位于句首, 如: She reads China Daily every day in order to (so as to) improve her English. 将表示目的的不定式置于句首, 也可强调目的的作用, 如: To master a foreign language, one must work hard at it. ②结果状语: They lived to see the liberation of their home town. 他们活到亲眼见到了他们家乡的解放. ③too + 形容词或副词 + 动词不定式, 表示“足能…”的结果, 如: You are old enough to take care of yourself now.

3、复合结构不定式: 由 for + 名词(或代词宾格) + 动词不定式即构成复合结构的动词不定式。其中 for 本身无意义。for 后面的名词或代词是不定式的逻辑主语, 这种不定式在句中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语或状语, 如: It is very important for us to get everything ready for the harvest. 当作表语用的形容词表示不定式的逻辑主语的性质或特征时, 就用介词 of 而不用 for 引出不定式的逻辑主语, 这些形容词一般有 good, nice, kind, wise, silly, stupid, foolish, right, wrong, careless, impolite 等, 如: It is very kind of you to help him every day.

4、疑问词 + 动词不定式: 疑问代词和疑问副词后可加动词不定式构成不定式短语, 在句中可作主语、表语或宾语, 如: How to prevent them from swimming in this river is a problem.

5、动词不定式的否定式: 动词不定式的否定式是由 not + 动词不定式构成, 如: It's wrong of you not to attend the meeting.

6、动词不定式的时态形式所表示的时间关系: (1) 一般式: 动词不定式一般式所表示的动作是和谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生, 但在多数情况下, 是在谓语动词所表示的动作之后发生, 如: We decided to plant more trees this spring. (其后), They often watch us play table tennis. (同时);

(2) 完成式: 动词不定式完成式所表示的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前, 如: I am sorry to have kept you waiting. (3) 进行式: 动词不定式进行式所表示的动作正在进行中, 而且与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生, 如: She happened to be writing a letter in the room when I came in.

7、动词不定式的被动语态用法: 如果动词不定式的逻辑主语为这个不定式所表示的动作的承受者时, 不定式一般就用被动语态形式, 如: What is to be done next hasn't been decided yet.

练习、非谓语动词 (一)

1. ---- Can you ride a horse? ---- No, I never had the chance _____.
A. for learning it B. for learning how C. how to learn it D. to learn how
2. Paul said, "Give me a chair _____. "
A. to sit B. sit C. sit on D. to sit on
3. I ran too fast _____ where I was going.
A. to notice B. for me to notice C. to notice for me D. and notice

4. ---- Have you enjoyed your visit here? ---- Yes, I'll be very sorry _____.
 A. for leaving B. of leaving C. to leave D. with leaving
5. ---- I'll help you whenever you need me. ---- Good. I'd like _____ me tomorrow.
 A. you helping B. that you will help C. you to help D. that you help
6. ---- I didn't hear you come in last night. ---- That's good. We tried _____ noisy.
 A. not be B. not to be C. to be not D. to not be
7. Because of air pollution being greatly reduced, this city is still _____.
 A. a good place which to be lived in B. lived as a good place
 C. a good place to live in D. living in as a good place
8. ---- Why was the official meeting called? ---- _____ new officers.
 A. Select B. Selecting C. To select D. For selecting
9. ---- Where did he go? ---- He went to another store _____.
 A. to buy pencils B. for buying pencils C. buy pencils D. buying pencils
10. ---- My baby has a heart trouble. ---- Did the doctor find it difficult _____ ?
 A. in treating B. treating C. for treating D. to treat
11. ---- Did the judge ask you many questions? ---- Yes, and _____.
 A. they were difficult to be answered B. to answer them was to be difficult
 C. they were difficult to answer D. they had difficulty in answering
12. That beggar seems _____ anything yesterday.
 A. not to have eaten B. not to eat C. didn't eat D. to not have eaten
13. The lost child desired nothing but _____ home.
 A. go B. to go C. going D. went
14. That box is _____.
 A. too heavy for me to carry B. too heavy for me to carry it
 C. so heavy for me to carry D. very heavy for me to carry
15. Would you be _____ to do me a favour, please?
 A. so kind as B. too kind C. as kind as D. enough kind
16. To learn to speak English well, _____.
 A. much practice is needed B. one needs much practice
 C. much practice is needed by one D. one is needed much practice
17. Tom kept quiet about the accident _____ lose his job.
 A. so not as to B. so as not to C. so as to not D. not so as to
18. Last summer I took a course on _____.
 A. how to make dresses B. how dresses be made
 C. how to be made dresses D. how dresses to be made
19. The house is not large enough _____.
 A. to live in B. to be lived in C. to live D. for living
20. Nobody likes _____.
 A. to speak ill of B. to be spoken ill of C. speaking ill of D. spoken ill of

21. I know him _____ a good football player while in college.
 A. to have been B. to be C. was D. had been
22. I was surprised _____.
 A. watching him to eat so quickly B. watch him eat so quickly
 C. watching him eat so quickly D. to watch him eat so quickly
23. Mr. White was seen _____ the Palace Museum.
 A. enter B. to enter C. entered D. to entering
24. I saw Mary _____ the house.
 A. open the door and go into B. to open the door and to go into
 C. open the door and to go into D. open the door and went into
25. Paul does nothing but _____ all day long.
 A. play B. to play C. playing D. played
26. Now we could not do anything but _____ for him here.
 A. waited B. waiting C. to wait D. wait
27. I don't know her and I don't _____.
 A. want B. want to C. want it D. to want
28. ---- Go to the theatre with me, will you? ---- I should like _____, but I don't have time.
 A. to B. too C. to do D. to go to
29. To play fair is as important as _____.
 A. to play well B. play well C. we play well D. playing well
30. It is the greatest happiness on earth _____.
 A. loving and to be loved B. to love and being loved
 C. to love and to be loved D. love and be loved
31. _____ is better to love than _____.
 A. That, to be loved B. That, be loved C. It, be loved D. It, to be loved
32. It's very foolish _____ it?
 A. for you to say B. of you to say C. with you saying D. in your saying
33. It _____ me two hours to find your new house.
 A. cost B. took C. spent D. used
34. We did not expect our offer _____ so quickly.
 A. rejected B. to reject C. to be rejected D. rejecting
35. He told her _____ there at once.
 A. get B. gets C. should get D. to get
36. We all think it most foolish _____ this mistake.
 A. for you making B. of you to make C. you to make D. for you to make
37. I really don't know _____.
 A. to swim B. how to swim C. to swim how D. how swim
38. ---- What do you think about English? ---- It's a difficult language _____.
 A. speaking B. to be spoken C. to speak D. spoken

语法复习十二：非谓语动词（二）——动词-ing 形式

（二）-ing 形式：动词的-ing 形式也是一种非谓语动词。-ing 形式仍保留有动词的特征，可以带有其所需要的宾语或状语而构成-ing 短语。

1、-ing 的形式：-ing 有一般式和完成式。及物动词的-ing 还有主动语态和被动语态，而不及物动词的-ing 则没有被动语态。现在以及物动词 make 和不及物动词 go 为例，将其-ing 各种形式列表如下：

| 动词 语态 形式 | 及物动词 make | | 不及物动词 go |
|-------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| | 主动语态 | 被动语态 | 主动语态 |
| 一般式 | making | being made | going |
| 完成式 | having made | having been made | having gone |

2、-ing 形式的基本用法。

（1）作主语：Seeing is believing. 百闻不如一见。Talking is easier than doing. -ing 作主语时，如果其结构较长，可用 it 作形式主语，而将作主语的-ing 后置。如：It isn't much good writing to them again. It's no use waiting here.

（2）作表语：Her job is washing and cooking. My hobby is collecting stamps.

（3）作宾语：①作及物动词的宾语。She likes drawing very much.; ②作某些短语动词的宾语。Mary is thinking of going back to New York.; ③ do+限定词（my, some, any, the 等）+ -ing, 表示“做…事”之意，如：We often do our cleaning on Saturday afternoon. Will you do any shopping on Saturday this afternoon? ④作介词的宾语：Her sister is good at learning physics.; ⑤作形容词 worth, busy 等的宾语：This book is well worth reading. -ing 作宾语带有宾语补足语时，要用 it 作为形式宾语，而将作宾语的-ing 后置，如：We found it no good talking like that. Do you think it necessary trying again?

（4）作定语：The sleeping child is only five years old. Do you know the man standing at the gate? 注：-ing 形式作定语用时，如果-ing 只是一个单词，就位于其修饰的名词之前，如果是-ing 短语，就位于其修饰的名词之后，-ing 作定语时，被-ing 所修饰的名词就是该-ing 的逻辑主语。另外，-ing 作定语用时，其动作和句子谓语动词所表示的动作是同时进行的，如果不是同时进行的，就不能用-ing 作定语，要使用定语从句，如：The girl who wrote a letter there yesterday can speak English very well.

（5）作宾语补足语：We can see steam rising from the wet clothes. 注：当-ing 在复合宾语中作宾语补足语用时，句中宾语就是这个-ing 的逻辑主语，可以带有这种复合宾语的动词有 see, watch, hear, observe, feel, find, have, keep 等。

（6）作状语：①时间状语：Seeing Tom, I couldn't help thinking of his brother. 分词在句中作时间状语时，其前一般可加 when 或 while，如：When crossing street, you must be careful. ②原因状语：Being ill, he didn't go to school yesterday. ③方式或伴随状语：Mary stood at the school gate waiting for Betty.

3、主动语态-ing 完成式的基本用法。主动语态-ing 完成式所表

词所表示的动作之前，一般在句中作时间或原因状语用。句中的主语是它的逻辑主语，并且是它所表示的动作的执行者，如：Having answered the letter, she went on to read an English novel.

4、被动语态-ing 一般式的基本用法。被动语态-ing 一般式所表示的动作是一个正在进行的被动动作，而且这个被动动作也是和句中谓语所表示的动作同时发生的。它一般在句中作定语或状语用。如：The truck being repaired there is ours.

5、被动语态-ing 完成式的基本用法。被动语态-ing 完成式所表示的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之前，在句中一般作状语用。如：Having been shown the lab, we were taken to see the library.

6、-ing 形式的复合结构。在-ing 前加物主代词或名词所有格即构成-ing 的复合结构。其中的物主代词或名词所有格为-ing 的逻辑主语。这种结构在句中可作主语、宾语或表语，如：Your smoking and drinking too much will do harm to your health. 但在口语中，这种结构如作宾语用，其中的物主代词常用人称代词的宾格，名词的所有格常用名词的普通格代替，如：She insisted on Peter's (or Peter) going there first.

7、-ing 形式与动词不定式在句中作主语、表语、宾语时的区别。一般说来，表示一个比较抽象或泛指的动作时多用-ing 形式。表示一个具体某一次的动作时，多用动词不定式，如：Our job is making steel. She likes playing the piano, but she doesn't want to play it today.

8、-ing 形式与动词不定式在句中作定语的区别。-ing 形式作定语用时，其动作一般与句中谓语动词所表示的动词同时发生，而动词不定式作定语时，其动作一般发生在句中谓语动词所表示的动作之后。如：The girl writing a letter there can speak English very well./I have three letters to write.

9、-ing 形式与动词不定式在作宾语补足语时的区别。(1) 不定式作宾补时，其动作一般发生在谓语动词所表示的动作之后，如：I have told them to come again tomorrow. (2) 在 see, watch, hear, feel 等之后，如果用-ing 形式作宾补，表示其动作正在进行中，而用不带 to 的不定式作宾补时，不定式所表示的动作是一个动作的过程，如：I hear her singing in the room. 我听见她正在屋里唱歌。 I hear her sing in the room. 我听见她在屋里唱过歌。

10、-ing 形式与动词不定式在句中作状语的区别。-ing 形式在句中作状语表示时间、原因、方式或伴随情况，而动词不定式一般式在句中作状语时，一般是作目的或结果状语，如：Not receiving his letter, I wrote to him again./ I looked into the window to see what was going on inside.

练习、非谓语动词（二）

1. Alien said that his trip was _____.

A. interested

B. interest

C. interesting

D. of interest

2. We can't understand _____ a decision until it is too late.

- A. speak B. to speak C. not to speak D. speaking
21. Charles Babbage is generally considered _____ the first computer.
A. to invent B. inventing C. to have invented D. having invented
22. It is no use _____ to come now. He is busy.
A. ask him B. to ask him C. that you ask him D. asking him
23. The murder was brought in, with his hands _____ behind his back.
A. being tied B. having tied C. to be tied D. tied
24. Mrs Smith warned her daughter _____ after drinking.
A. never to drive B. to never drive C. never driving D. never drive.
25. The computer centre, _____ last year is very popular among the students in this school.
A. open B. opening C. having opened D. opened.
26. Do you know the boy _____ under the big tree?
A. lay B. lain C. laying D. lying
27. Most of the artists _____ to the party 'were from South Africa.
A. invited B. to invite C. being invited D. had been invited
28. English is a language _____ in many countries.
A. spoken B. speaking C. be spoken D. to speak
29. "Can you read?" Mary said _____ to the notice.
A. angrily, pointing B. and point angrily C. angrily, pointed D. and angrily pointing
30. There was a terrible noise _____ the sudden burst of Tigt.
A. followed B. following C. to be followed D. being followed
31. _____ more attention, the trees could have grown better.
A. Given B. To give C. Giving D. Having given
32. _____ their students, the famous teacher came into the hall.
A. Followed B. Followed by
C. Being followed D. Having been followed
33. Your flat needs _____. Would you like me _____ it for you?
A. to clean, to do B. cleaning, doing C. cleaning, to do D. to be cleaned, doing
34. Does your new secretary _____ short hand?
A. know to take B. know how to take C. know how take D. know how taking
35. Tommy had his big brother _____ his shoes for him.
A. to tie B. tie C. tied D. tying
36. Would you please _____ write on the textbooks?
A. don't B. not to C. not D. to not
37. I'd _____ the operation unless it is absolutely necessary.
A. rather not have B. rather not to have C. not rather had D. rather not having
38. Your mother and I are looking forward _____ you.
A. of seeing B. for seeing C. to see D. to seeing

39. The girl couldn't _____ how red his face was.

- A. help to notice B. be helping to notice C. be helping noticing D. help noticing

40. Excuse me, but it is time to have your temperature _____.

- A. taking B. to take C. take D. taken

语法复习十二：非谓语动词（三）——过去分词

（三）过去分词：

1、过去分词的基本用法：过去分词只有一种形式，也没有主动语态，它所表示的动作是一个被动的或是已完成的动作。过去分词在句中也可用作定语、表语、宾语或状语等成分。过去分词在句中作某种成分时，其逻辑主语一般为该分词所表示的动作的承受者，如：

（1）作定语：过去分词作定语时，如果这个分词是一个单词，就位于其修饰的名词之前，如果是分词短语，就位于其修饰的名词之后。被过去分词所修饰的名词，就是该分词的逻辑主语，如：The stolen car was found by the police last week.

（2）作表语：过去分词作表语时，表示其逻辑主语所处的状态，其逻辑主语就是句中的主语，如：The glass is broken. 这个玻璃杯是破的。 注：过去分词作表语时，和动词的被动语态结构相似，但两者表达的意义不同，如：The glass was broken by my little brother. 这个玻璃杯是被我小弟弟打破的。作表语用的过去分词在许多词典中已列为形容词，如：crowded, devoted, discouraged, done, dressed, drunk, experienced, frightened, gone, hurt, interested, killed, known, learned, lost, pleased, satisfied, shut, surprised, tired, undressed, worried, astonished, broken, completed, covered 等。

（3）作宾语补足语：过去分词作宾语补足语时，句中的宾语就是其逻辑主语，如：When I opened the door, I found the ground covered by fallen leaves. 注：动词 have 后的复合宾语中，宾语补足语如为过去分词，常表示该分词所表示的动作是由别人来执行的而不是句中主语自己来执行的，如：I had my bike repaired yesterday. 昨天我（找别人）把我的自行车给修了。

（4）作状语：过去分词作状语时，相当于一个状语从句，该结构的逻辑主语一般都是主句的主语，是过去分词所表示意义的逻辑宾语。为了使作状语的过去分词意义更加明确，常在分词前加 when, if, while, though, as 等连词，如：Seen from the hill/ When seen from the hill, our town looks beautiful.; Given more time/ If given more time, we could have done it better. (we 是该结构的逻辑主语，是 give 的逻辑宾语。)

独立主格：上述-ing 和过去分词的用法中，-ing 和过去分词在句中均有逻辑主语，但有时它们也能有自己的独立的主语，这种独立的主语，一般为名词或代词，位于其前之前，和-ing 或过去分词构成独立主格。独立主格在句中一般只作状语用，而-ing 和过去分词作用的形式，则要根据它们所表示的动作和句中谓语动词所表示的时间关系而定。至于独立主格中是使用-ing 或是过去分词，则要根据它们的主语和其所表示的动作的主动被动关系而定，如：The bell ringing, we all stopped talking. 注：The work having been finished, she sat down to have a rest. ①独立结构中的 being 或 having been 常可省去，如：The meeting (being) over, all left the room. ②作伴随状语的独

立结构常可用 with 短语来代替，如：She read the letter, tears rolling down her cheeks./ She read the letter with tears rolling down her cheeks.

2、-ing 形式与过去分词的区别：

(1) 语态不同：-ing 形式表示主动概念，及物动词的过去分词表示被动概念。an inspiring speech 鼓舞人心的演说；the inspired audience 受鼓舞的听众。

(2) 时间关系不同：现在分词所表示的动作一般是正在进行中的动作，而过去分词所表示的动作，往往是已经完成的动作，如：The changing world 正在发生的世界；the changed world 已经起了变化的世界。

练习、非谓语动词（三）

1. There is no question of _____ able to finish it himself.
A. Tom was B. Tom's being C. Tom's be D. Tom is
2. The new shopping center _____ now will be put into use by the end of this year.
A. built B. be built C. being built D. to be built
3. "Have you had supper?" "Not yet. The meal _____."
A. are being cooked B. is being cooked C. is cooked D. are cooked
4. "I'm glad _____ you here in the hotel." "It's my great pleasure to have you _____ us."
A. meeting, to B. to have met, with C. having met, among D. to meet, of
5. I'm afraid I can't make myself _____ in English.
A. understanding B. understand C. to be understood D. understood
6. Although in a hurry, Wilson _____.
A. couldn't stop walking B. couldn't help the stranger
C. stopped to help the stranger D. didn't answer the stranger
7. Janet is easy _____.
A. for getting along with B. by getting along with
C. to get along with D. got along with
8. Don't forget _____ the light when you leave.
A. turn off B. to turn off C. turning off D. turned off
9. The mother is very glad; her baby is beginning _____.
A. understanding what she means B. to understand that she meant
C. to understand what she means D. noticing what she means ,
10. I think this story is _____.
A. worth being read B. worth reading C. worth to read D. worth of reading
11. This scientist is a man _____ praise.
A. worth to B. worthy to be C. worthy of D. worth
12. I don't want _____ any more trouble, you see?
A. there being B. it to be C. it being D. there to be

13. When she returned home, she found the window open and something _____.
 A. stealing B. missed C. stolen D. to steal
14. Strictly _____, it isn't worth the price you are asking.
 A. to speak B. speaking C. speak D. spoken
15. Time _____, they'll come here to watch us _____ football.
 A. permitted, playing B. permitted, to play C. permitting, play D. permitting, to play
16. The man was seen _____ into the courtyard.
 A, stealing B. stolen C. be stealing D. had stolen
17. Bob should love _____ to the party tomorrow evening.
 A. taking B. to be taken C. to take D. being taken
18. Tom had no choice but _____ the classroom with his classmates.
 A. to clean B. clean C. cleaning D. cleans
19. Mr. Brown said that his car needed
 A. to be repaired B. being repaired C. be repairing D. to repair
20. The old man didn't know whether to sell the car or _____.
 A. being kept for later use B. kept for later use
 C. to keep it for later use D. to be kept it for later use
21. The noise of the desks _____ could be heard in the next classroom.
 A. being opened and closed B. opened and closed
 C. having been opened and closed D. to be opened and closed
22. I remember _____ someone _____ the umbrella away.
 A. to see, take B. having seen, to take
 C. to see, to take D. having seen, take
23. She was noticed _____ the shop.
 A. to enter B. enter C. having entered D. entered
24. I couldn't help _____ when I heard the joke.
 A. being laughed B. laughing C. to be laughing D. to laugh
25. _____, she burst into tears.
 A. Deeply moved B. Deeply moving
 C. As she deeply moved D. As she was deeply moving
26. The problem requires _____.
 A. studying with great care B. to study carefully
 C. to be studied without carelessness D. taking great care of studying it
27. _____ carelessly, the boy made mistakes here and there. _____.
 A. being written B. Wrote C. Write D. Writing
28. He would rather _____ his parents with their housework than _____ out to play games.
 A. to help, to go B. help, go C. help, to go D. to help, go

29. The boy had his leg _____ while _____ football.
 A. broken, playing B. break, play C. broken, played D. broke, was playing
30. Having finished the work, _____.
 A. it was almost six o'clock
 B. a postman came and delivered the evening paper and some letters
 C. supper had been already prepared D. we had a rest and then had supper
31. He is ill. He has kept _____.
 A. coughing all along B. to cough at night
 C. cough since yesterday D. being coughed day and night
32. It is no use _____ without _____.
 A. to talk, doing B. taking, being done
 C. talking, doing D. being talked, being to do
33. "I usually go there by boat." "Why not _____ by train for a change?"
 A. try going B. to try going C. trying to go D. to try and go
34. _____, she felt quite shy at the party.
 A. As she a stranger B. Being a stranger
 C. According to a stranger D. She like a stranger
35. Every morning he gets up early and practises _____ and then _____ to school.
 A. to read English, go B. reading English, going
 C. reading English, goes D. of reading English, goes
36. While _____ football on tin playground, I found 'my keys _____.
 A. playing, lost , B. play, losing C. played, being lost D. having played, lost
37. _____ the same mistakes again made his parents very angry.
 A. His having made B. He has made C. He had making D. Him making
38. Dick made it _____ to all his friends.
 A. to know B. known C. know D. knowing
39. Anna spends one hour a day _____ spoken English.
 A. practise B. to practise C. on practising D. in practising
40. No one was surprised at _____ the examination.
 A. he passing B. his pass C. him pass D. his passing
41. Although swimming is his favourite sport, yet he doesn't like _____ today.
 A. to swim B. swimming C. swim D. to have swim
42. She sat at the desk and set about _____ a letter to her friend.
 A. to write B. writing C. write D. written
43. This soup is cold; it needs _____.
 A. to heat B. to be heated C. being hot D. heated
44. I went _____ a balloon but I didn't see anyone _____ balloons.
 A. to buy, to sell B. to buy, selling C. buying, selling D. buying, to sell

45. Anna is often heard _____ songs in her room.

A. sung

B. singing

C. sing

D. to sing

46. The more you practise _____ English, the better your _____ English will be.

A. to speak, speaking

B. speaking, spoken

C. spoken, spoken

D. spoken, speaking

语法复习十二：非谓语动词 (一) ——动词不定式

1~5 DDACC 6~10 BCCAD 11~15 CABAA 16~20 BBAAB 21~25 ADBAA

26~30 DBAAC 31~35 DBBCD 36~38 BBC

语法复习十二：非谓语动词 (二) ——动词-ing 形式

1~5 CDDAB 6~10 BAACB 11~15 BCADC 16~20 BCCDB 21~25 CDDAD

26~30 DAAAB 31~35 ABCBB 36~40 CADDD

语法复习十二：非谓语动词 (三) ——过去分词

1~5 BCBBD 6~10 CCBCB 11~15 CDCBC 16~20 ABAAC 21~25 ADABA

26~30 ADBAD 31~35 ACABC 36~40 AABDD 41~46 ABBBDB

语法复习十三：形容词和副词

比较级和最高级及其使用

形容词的比较级和最高级

| 说 明 | | | 例 词 |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| | 一般情况 | 加 er, est | smaller, smallest |
| | 以 e 结尾 | 加 r, st | larger, largest |
| 单音节词和少数多音节的形容词，加词尾 er, est | 以"辅音字母+y"结尾的词 | 改 y 为 i，再加 er, est | busier, busiest |
| | 重读闭音节结尾，末尾只有一个辅音字母 | 双写末尾辅音字母，加 er, est | fatter, fattest |
| | 以 ow, er 结尾的双音节词 | 加 er, est | narrower, narrowest cleverer, cleverest |
| 多数双音节和多音节的词 | 加 more most | | more beautiful, most important |

副词的比较级和最高级

1. 大多数以 ly 结尾的副词前加 more 和 most 来构成比较级和最高级。
2. 少数单音节副词，加 er, est 构成其比较级和最高级。

几个特殊的形容词和副词

| 原级 | 比较级 | 最高级 |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| good, well | better | best |
| bad, ill, badly | worse | worst |
| many, much | more | most |
| little | less | least |
| far | farther, further | farthest, furthest |
| old | older, elder | oldest, eldest |

比较级和最高级的常用句型

| 名称 | 句型 | 例句 |
|----|--|--|
| 相等 | as 原形 as (as 原形+名词 as) | The train travels as fast as the 3:55 train. He has not as much money as his friend. |
| 不及 | not as(so) 原形 as (not as[so]+名词+原形 as) | She is not as (so) beautiful as her sister. |

| | | |
|-----------|--|---|
| | 比较级+ than | Health is more important than wealth. |
| 超越 | the +比较级+of the two 两者中较... 的一个 | He is the taller of the two. |
| 用于否定 | no +比较级+than 和...一样不 | He is no richer than I. 他和我一样不富有。 |
| 用于否定 | 最...不过 | His work couldn't be worse. 他的工作再糟糕不过了。 |
| 程度递增 | er and er, more and more+多音节词原级 (越来越...) | higher and higher more and more important |
| 两种情况同时变化 | the +比较级, the+比较级 (越..., 越...) | The quicker you get ready, the sooner we'll be able to leave. |
| 三者或三者以上比较 | the +最高级+of/in+比较范围 (...之中最...) | Of all things in the world, people are the precious. |

比较级结构的修饰语

1. 用于原级之前:

almost, nearly, just, exactly, quite, half, twice, three times, a third, etc.

John is almost as tall as you.

The river is three times as long as that one.

We have a third as many students as we had last term.

2. 用于比较级前

many, a few (用于"more +可数名词"前)

It takes many more hours to go there by train than by plane.

a lot, much, a bit, even, a little, still, a great deal, far, rather, two years, ten percent, three times etc.

It's cold this year, but it's even colder last year.

We produced 6% more grain this year than we did last year.

3. 用于形容词和最高级前

the very, much the, by far the, the first/second

This hat is by far the largest in the world.

Gold is the very most valuable of all materials.

位置与功能

高考重点要求

1. 掌握形容词、副词比较级、最高级的常用句型及用法

2. 掌握形容词、副词的原级、比较级和最高级修饰语及倍数的比较表达。

3. 注意多外形容词修饰同一名词的前后顺序。

4. 分清常用同义与近义形容词在表达中的语义差别。

此项语法内容从 1991 年到达 2001 年间共出现 45 次 (包括上海题), 可见其重要。

形容词作用与位置

1. 定语。

在名词前做定语，为最常见用法。请注意多个形容词（含其它起形容词作用的词）做前置定语的顺序。

"县官行令杀国才。"这一句就概述了形容词顺序问题。即：

限（冠词[物主代词、指示代词]数词等）观（描绘）形（大小、形状等）龄（年龄、新旧等）色（色彩）国（国籍、出处等）材（材料、功用等）

an interesting English film a heavy black Chinese silk umbrella

做后置定语。修饰由不定代词no, any, some, every和one, thing等构成的复合词或形容词短语。

2. 表语。一定要注意系动词的出现情况。这是一个高考热点问题。

常见系动词有：be

变化系词：become, get, turn, grow, go

保持系词：keep, remain, stay

感官系词：look, smell, taste, feel, sound, appear, seem, prove etc.

3. 形容词作状语，表状况、原因、结果等。这也是应注意的一点。

He went to bed, cold and hungry.

4. 做宾补。

N: ①某些以a 开始的形容词只做表语，不做定语。

afraid, alike, alone, asleep, awake, alive

②某些表身体健康状况的形容词只能做表语,不做定语

well, ill faint

③某些以-ly 结尾的词是形容词而不是副词。

friendly, lively, lovely, lonely, likely, deadly, orderly 等。

④复合形容词的形式问题。

an 800-meter-wide river an English-speaking country a middle-aged man

副词

位置

1) 时间副词和地点副词一般放于句尾。如同时出现，则地点副词在前。

They went boating in Zhongshan Park yesterday.

2) 表频率的时间副词是高考的热点

always, seldom, often, never, rarely, usually 等，通常放于行为动词之前，be词、情态动词和助动词之后。

He is always telling lies, so I will never believe him.

3) 程度副词一般放在被修饰词之前（但 enough除外）

He is very young, so he is not old enough to go to school.

N: 有些副词有两种形式，一个与形容词同形，一个以ly 结尾，但它们的含义是不同的。

closely-close nearly-near freely-free deeply-deep highly-high widely-wide 等。

以ly 结尾的词表较为抽象的含义，而与形容词同形的副词则表较为具体的概念。

He is highly praised for what he has done. (高度地)

He can see a bird is flying high in the sky. (飞得高，具有可见性)

练习、形容词和副词

高考题选：

1. John has three sisters. Mary is the ____ of the three. (MET88)

- A. most cleverest B. more clever C. cleverest D. cleverer
2. The students are ___ young people between the age of sixteen and twenty. (MET88)
A. most B. almost C. mostly D. at most
3. She told us ___ story that we all forgot about the time. (MET88)
A. such an interesting B. such interesting a
C. so an interesting D. a so interesting
4. It is impossible for so ___ workers to do so work in a single day. (MET88)
A. few, much B. few, many C. little, much D. little, many
5. The horse is getting old and can't run ___ it did. (MET88)
A. as faster as B. so fast than C. so fast as D. as fast as
6. The story sounds ___. (MET89)
A. to be true B. as true C. being true D. true
7. I'd been expecting ___ letters the whole morning, but there weren't ___ for me. (MET89)
A. some; any B. many; a few C. some; one D. a few; none
8. This year they have produced ___ grain ___ they did last year. (MET89)
A. as less; as B. as few; as C. less; than D. fewer; than
9. After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced ___ tractors in 1988 as the year before. (MET90)
A. as twice many B. as many twice
C. twice as many D. twice many as
10. The pianos in the other shop will be , but _____. (MET90)
A. cheaper; not as better B. more cheaper; not as better
C. cheaper; not as good D. more cheap; not as good
11. ---Can I help you?
---Well, I'm afraid the box is ___ heavy for you, but thank you all the same. (MET90)
A. so B. much C. very D. too
12. ---Excuse me, is this Mr. Brown's office?
---I'm sorry, but Mr. Brown ___ works here. He left about three weeks ago. (MET90)
A. not now B. no more C. not still D. no longer
13. If we had followed his plan, we could have done the job better with ___ money and ___ people. (MET90)
A. less; less B. fewer; fewer C. less; fewer D. fewer; less
14. Oh, John. ___ you gave me! (MET90)
A. How a pleasant surprise B. How pleasant surprise
C. What a pleasant surprise D. What pleasant surprise
15. ---How did you find your visit to museum?
---I thoroughly enjoyed it. It was ___ than I expected. (MET91)
A. far more interesting B. even much interesting
C. so more interesting D. a lot much interesting
16. Canada is larger than ___ country in Asia. (NMET91)
A. any B. any other C. other D. another
17. Those oranges taste ___. (MET91)
A. good B. well C. to be good D. to be well
18. The experiment was ___ easier than we had expected. (NMET91)

- A. more B. much more C. much D. more much
19. ___ food you've cooked! (NMET91)
A. How a nice B. What a nice
C. How nice D. What nice
20. Go and get your coat. It's ___ you left it. (MET92)
A. there B. where C. there where D. where there
21. John was so sleepy that he could hardly keep his eyes___. (MET92)
A. open B. to be opened C. to open D. opening
22. ---Are you feeling ___?
---Yes, I'm fine now. (NMET92)
A. any well B. any better C. quite good D. quite better
23. Which is___ country, Canada or Australia? (MET92)
A. a large B. larger C. a larger D. the larger
24. ---Will you give this message to Mr. White, please?
---Sorry, I can't. He ___. (MET92)
A. doesn't any more work here B. doesn't any longer here work
C. doesn't work any more here D. doesn't work here any longer
25. How can you finish the drawing? (MET92)
A. often B. soon C. long D. rapid
26. ___ terrible weather we've been having these days! (MET92)
A. How a B. What a C. How D. What
27. It takes a long time to go there by train. It's___ by road. (MET93)
A. quick B. the quickest C. much quick D. quicker
28. ___ from Beijing to London! (MET93)
A. How long way it is B. What a long way it is
C. How long way is it D. What a long way it is
29. She doesn't speak___ her friends, but her written work is excellent. (MET93)
A. as well as B. as often as C. so much as D. as good as
30. ---Mum, I think I'm___ to get back to school.
---Not really, My dear. You'd better stay at home for another day or two. (NMET93)
A. so well B. so good C. well enough D. good enough
31. ---If you don't like the red coat, take the blue one.
---OK, but do you have size___ in blue? This one's a bit tight for me. (NMET93)
A. a big B. a bigger C. the big D. the bigger
32. John plays football___, if not better than, Davi. (NMET94)
A. as well B. as well as C. so well D. so well as
33. We all write___, even when there's not much to say. (NMET94)
A. now and then B. by and by C. step by step D. more or less
34. ---Do you remember ___ he came?
---Yes I do, he came by car. (NMET94)
A. how B. when C. that D. if
35. If there were no examinations, we should have ___at school. (NMET94)
A. the happiest time B. a more happier time
C. much happiest time D. a much happier time

36. ---Have you finished your report yet?
 ---No, I'll finish in ___ ten minutes. (NMET95)
 A. another B. other C. more D. less
37. ---I'd like ___ information about the management of your hotel, please.
 ---Well, you could have ___ word with the manager. He might be helpful. (NMET95)
 A. some; a B. an; some C. some; some D. an; a
38. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, ___ great it is. (NMET95)
 A. what B. how C. however D. whatever
39. We decided not to climb the mountains because it was raining _____. (NMET96)
 A. badly B. hardly C. strongly D. heavily
40. How beautifully she sings! I have never heard _____. (NMET96)
 A. the better voice B. a good voice
 C. the best voice D. a better voice
41. Tony is going camping with ___ boys. (NMET93)
 A. little two other B. two little other
 C. two other little D. little other two
42. ---How was your recent visit to Qingdao? (NMET95)
 ---It was great. We visited some friends, and spent ___ the days at the seaside.
 A. few last sunny B. last few sunny
 C. last sunny few D. few sunny last
43. Can you believe that in ___ a rich country there should be _ many poor people? (MET95)
 A. such; such B. such; so C. so; so D. so; such
44. Wait till you are more _____. It's better to be sure than sorry. (NMET97)
 A. inspired B. satisfied C. calm D. certain
45. Professor White has written some short stories, but he is ___ known for his plays. (NMET98)
 A. the best B. more C. better D. the most
46. ___ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills. (NMET2000)
 A. Brave enough students B. Enough brave students
 C. Students brave enough D. Students enough brave
47. It's always difficult being in a foreign country, ___ if you don't speak the language. (NMET2000)
 A. extremely B. naturally C. basically D. especially
48. I am surprised that you should have been fooled by such a (an) ___ trick. (2001 春招)
 A. ordinary B. easy C. smart D. simple
49. It is generally believed that teaching is ___ it is a science. (NMET2001)
 A. an art much as B. much an art as
 C. as an art much as D. as much an art as
50. ---I'm very ___ with my own cooking. It looks nice and smells delicious.
 ---Mm, it does have a ___ smell. (2002 春招)
 A. pleasant; pleased B. pleased; pleased
 C. pleasant; pleasant D. pleased; pleasant
51. Boris has brains. In fact, I doubt whether anyone in the class has ___ IQ.
 A. a high B. a higher C. the higher D. the highest

语法复习十三：形容词和副词

1. C. 原题中的 three sisters 这一信息词语暗示考生要用最高级的形式。clever 的最高级有两种：the most clever, the cleverest
2. C. mostly 是副词，意思是："主要地"，修饰整个句子。用 most 时应为 most of the students；用 almost 通常说 almost all+n.
3. A. such 与 so 修饰名词时可这样使用。
so+形容词+a/an+可数名词的单数
so many/few +可数名词复数 so much/little+不可数名词
4. A. few 修饰可数名词的复数；much 修饰不可数名词。
5. D. A、C 项是语法错误。as...as 之间不能用比较级形式。B 项也是语法错误，than 前没有比较级，把 than 变成 as 就对了。实际上 not as...as=not more than.
6. D. sound 是"听起来"的意思。它是系动词，其后接形容词做表语。类似的系动词还有 look seem taste smell feel.
7. A. some 常用在肯定句中，而 any 常用在否定、疑问和条件句中。
8. C. grain 是不可数名词。A 项是语法错误，as...as 之间用原级，B 项 few 不修饰 grain，D 项也如此。
9. C. 表示倍数的词与其他表示程度的副词修饰 as...as 结构时，应放在其前面。
10. C. 该题考查了考生是否掌握形容词比较级的两种形式，该句可理解为：The pianos in the other shop will be cheaper, but not as good as those in this shop.
11. D. 此处可理解为 the box is too heavy for you to carry.
12. D. no longer 强调时间；no more 强调数量和次数。
13. C. better 这一信息词可暗示考生用比较级形式，less 修饰不可数名词，fewer 修饰可数名词的复数。
14. C. what 与 how 修饰名词引起的感叹句：
what+a/an+形容词+单数可数名词
what+形容词+可数名词复数
what +形容词+不可数名词
How+形容词+a/an+可数名词单数
注意 what 的用法与 such 相似，how 与 so 相似。且 give sb. a surprise 是惯用法。
15. A. 用来修饰比较级的副词有：a little, a bit; even still; far, by far; a lot, a great deal; much, any(用于否定、疑问); rather.
16. A. 用比较级表示最高级的意思，用 than+any other+单数名词(包括主语在内)或用 any+单数名词(比较范围不包括主语在内)。因加拿大不属亚洲。如，把 Asia 改为 North America，则 B 正确。
17. A. taste 是系动词，后接形容词做表语。B 项 well 如果是形容词，表示"身体好"。但 Things are well with me. 属于特殊情况。参看 6 题。
18. C. 参看 15 题。
19. D. 参看 14 题。
20. B. where 引导表语从句，且 where 在表语从句中做地点状语。
21. A. 当 open 做宾补时，一般用它的形容词，不用它的现在分词。又如：with his eyes open/closed
22. B. any 修饰比较级时，一般用于疑问句和否定句中。
23. D. 表示两者中"最..."的意思，用 the+比较级。此句可理解 Canada is the larger of the two countries.
24. D. no more 与 no longer 变成 not...any more 或 not...any longer 时 any more 和 any longer 要置于句尾，可参看 12 题。
25. B. how often 表示频率，与题意不符。how long 句中的谓语动词应用延续性动词，是"多久"的意思。D 项 rapid 是形容词不能修饰动词。How soon 的回答词用 in+时间，因此，全句的意思

- 是："在多长时间之内(或以后)你能画完画?"且句中谓语是瞬间动词。
26. D. 可参看 14 题。weather 是不可数名词。
27. D. 此处可理解为 It's quicker to go by road than by train.
28. D. 参看 14 题。
29. A. 原题中的 but 与 excellent 两个信息词可暗示考生, 且 not as...as 相当于 not more than, 因此, 该句的意思是："她讲的不如朋友的好, 但她的笔头好。"
30. C. well 是形容词"身体好"的意思。这是 It's+adj+enough to do sth 句型。该句意思是："我身体已好, 可以返回学校了。"
31. B. 形容词的比较级修饰可数名词的单数时, 前面不要忘了加 a, 泛指比较...的一个。例如, This shirt is a little larger. Could you show me a smaller one?
32. B. 是 29 题的创新。该句的意思是："如果不比 David 好的话, 那么会跟 David 踢的一样好。"if not better than 为插入语。
33. A. 从 even when there's not much to say 这一信息句可知。now and then 相当于 sometimes, occasionally 和 from time to time, B 项 by and by=soon, C 项 step by step=gradually, D 项 more or less=about, 修饰名词, 但也可修饰动词, 作状语。
34. A. 从答语中 by car 可知, how 问的是方式。
35. D. have a good/happy time 是惯用法, much 修饰比较级。参看 31 题。
36. A. more 与 another 在表示"再、又"时, 用法不同, more 置于数词后面, 而 another 置于数词的前面。
37. A. information 是不可数名词。have a word with sb. 相当于 speak/talk to/with sb. 与...谈话。
38. C. however 是连接副词, 修饰形容词 great 并引导一个让步状语从句, 意思是："无论困难有多大。"
39. D. "下大雨"应说 "rain hard/heavily".
40. D. 意为："我从未听过比她还好的噪音。"用比较级表达最高级的概念。
41. C. 要知道形容词排列作定语的顺序。
42. B. 与 41 题考查的目的相同。
43. B. 可参看 3 题。
44. D. 从下文 It's better to be sure than sorry. 即"确信要比后悔好"可知, 填入 D 项。A、B、C 项不符合逻辑。
45. C. 该题考查副词用法。四个选项均为副词的比较级或最高级, 题干的两个并列分句中, 已给出 some short stories 和 his plays 这一特定的语境, 表示二者之间的比较需用副词的比较级。well known 是一惯用词组, 意为"出名的"、"众所周知的", well 的比较级为 better, 故答案为 C。
46. C. 形容词作后置定语。enough 为副词, 修饰形容词 brave, 放在其后。
47. D. 意为"在国外通常是困难的, 特别是你不会说外语"。
48. D. 意为"我很吃惊你竟然被这么简单的一个诡计愚弄了。"此处, 只有用 D 项才能准确表达这种语气。
49. D. "教学更像是一门科学。"第一个 as 为副词。
50. D.
51. B.

语法复习十四：代 词

It 的用法

1. 作人称代词

John likes playing Pingpong. / He always does it in the afternoon. (指代上下文提到的事物); / It's time we went home. / How far is it from here to your home? / It is getting warmer and warmer. / It's very quiet at the moment. (可指时间、天气、环境等)

2. 引导词

A. 作形式主语，代替由不定式、动名词或从句表示的真正主语。

It's important for us to learn a second language. / It's no use talking to him. / It's known to all that the earth goes round the sun.

B. 作形式宾语，代替由不定式、动名词或从句表示的真正宾语。

We feel it our duty to help others. / He made it clear that he would leave the city.

C. 强调结构: It is (was) + 被强调部分 + that (或who)...

注意: 在强调结构中，如被强调部分为时间状语或地点状语，其后的连接词也绝不能为when或where，而应用that。在复习中，一定要注意句式的不同。

It was in Shanghai **that** I bought the guitar. (that引起强调句)

It was Shanghai **where** I bought the guitar. (where引起定从)

It was twelve o'clock **when** we arrived there. (when引起时间状语从句)

It was at twelve o'clock **that** we arrived there. (that引起强调句)

3. it, one, that 的区别: 作为代词，这三个词的对比使用是高考的热点之一。

NMET2000, 23.

---Why don't we take a little break? ---Didn't we just have _____?

A. it B. that C. one D. this

NMET2001, 25.

The Parkers bought a new house but _____ will need a lot of work before they can move in.

A. they B. it C. one D. which

one 用以指代同类事物中的任一，that 特指性强，指代可数与不可数词，而it指代上文提过的同一事物。

不定代词

不定代词种类较多，用法各异，在使用中一定要注意区别。

1、both, either, neither 都表两者范围，在句中作主语、宾语、定语，both可用作同位语。both 意为"两者都"，either 表"两者中任一个"，neither表"两者都不"。

2、any, none, all 表三者或三者以上范围，any 表任何一个、一些(不可数或复数概念，用于否定句、疑问句或条件从句中); none 表三者或三者以上中的哪一个都不; 表示不可数物中的一点儿也没有; all 整个的; 所有的(三者或三者以上); 所有的(不可数)。

e.g. This book is a good seller, so you can buy it at any shop in Beijing. / None of us are/is perfect. / All of the village was flooded.

3、no one, nobody, none, nothing: no one, nobody表没有人，nothing 指没有什么事物，none 兼指人和物。none 着眼于数量概念。"特指的人或物一个也没有，一点儿也没有"。

---How many people are there in the hall? ---None.

---who wants to go with him? ---No one(Nobody).

---What can you see in the bottle? ---Nothing.

---Is there any water in it? ---None.

4、another, the other, the other+复数名词(或the others), other (或other +复数名词): another 表三者或三者以上范畴中的任一; 与数词连用, 表"再有"; the other 表两者中的另外一个, 特指; the other+复数名词(或the others), 另外那些, 表示其余所有的人或物, 用于特指; others (或other+复数名词)另一些, 表余下人或物中的另一些, 泛指。

---I don't like this, show me **another** one. (NMET 2000, 16)

If you want to change for a double room you'll have to pay _____ \$15.

A. another B. other C. more D. Each (A)

人称、物主、反身、指示代词

高考重点要求

1. 掌握人称代词、物主代词、疑问代词、反身代词、指示代词的基本用法。2. 重点掌握不定代词的指代含义及数的情况, 能通过语境准确选取答案。3. 掌握it的基本用法。

一. 人称代词

1) 分清主格和宾格形式。

eg: ---I love you more than her, child. / ---You mean more than ____ love her or more than she loves ____? A. you; me B. I; you C. you; you D. I; me

2) 注意约定俗成的用法。

---Who is it? ---It's me. ---I'd like to have a rest. ---Me, too.

3) 使用we 和you 泛指一般人

4) 使用she代表国家、船只、月亮、大地等

China is a great country. She has a long history.

5) 并列主语或宾语中顺序是: you, he(she) and I; we, you and they

二. 物主代词: 名词性物主代词——在句中做主语、宾语、表语、补足语, 构成双重所有格: a friend of mine。形容词性物主代词——只能起定语作用。

三. 反身代词

1) 在句中作宾语、表语和同位语; 2) 单复数的确定; 3) 在一些语境中的特殊含义。

e.g. I'm not quite myself today. 我今天不大舒服。/ Make yourself at home. 不要拘礼; 请随便吧。/ Don't get nervous, help yourself to what you like. 别紧张, 喜欢吃什么就吃什么。/ Have you enjoyed yourself today? 你今天玩得愉快吗?

四. 指示代词

(一) this, that, these those

1. 在句子中作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

2. this(these)一般指时间和空间上较近的人或物, 而that (those)常指时间和空间上较远的人或物。e.g. This is a novel and that is a magazine.

3. this(these)一般指后面要讲到的事物, 而that(those)常指前面讲到的事物。e.g. What he told me is this: he wanted to go to Beijing. / He didn't come. That is why he didn't know.

4. that, those 常用来指代前面提到过的某个名词。e.g. The oil output in 1998 was higher than that of 1995. (that 代替oil output) / The cars made in Japan are better than those in Germany.

(二) such

such引起倒装句, 谓语数取决于后面主语の数: e.g. Such is my answer. / Such are our people.

做定语, 注意和so 的区别, 尤其是在so ...that, such...that 句型中。e.g. I have never seen such beautiful flowers. (复数名词前, so 不可) / I have never seen such a great film. (也可为so great a film)

/ We have such beautiful weather today that we should go out for an outing. (不可数词前, 不可用so)
 / There are so many people in the hall that it's hard for me to find him. (在数量概念的many, much, little, few 之前, 不可用such)

练习 (一)、代 词

一、强化训练:

- New English-Chinese Dictionary has been republished several times, _____ more up to date than the last edition.
 A. any B. everyone C. either D. each
- After paying 1,000 dollars _____, you'll all become full members of our club.
 A. each B. all C. every D. both
- _____ was her cruelty that we all hated her.
 A. It B. What C. That D. Such
- Mary has been ill in bed for a week. I wonder if she is _____ better now.
 A. much B. some C. any D. very
- Which of these two ties will you take? -I don't like these. Do you have any _____ ?
 A. one B. other C. ones D. others
- I'd rather ride a bike as bike riding has _____ of the trouble of taking buses.
 A. much B. all C. neither D. none
- I need some blue ink today but there is _____ at hand.
 A. not B. nothing C. a little D. none
- I found the very watch of mine _____ I had left _____.
 A. where, it B. that, it C. which, one D. where, one
- I haven't got time to get the tickets. Who's going to _____?
 A. do so B. do it C. buy it D. do them
- Jack certainly has a high opinion of Susan. It can't be better than _____ of him.
 A. hers B. she C. that D. her
- Shall we introduce _____ fire-fighting equipment from abroad? -Go ahead, if necessary.
 A. other B. a few more C. another D. some other
- How about the price of these refrigerators? -They are equal in price to, if not cheaper than, _____ at the other stores.
 A. others B. it C. that D. the ones
- I dislike _____ when others laugh at me in public or speak ill of me behind. -So do I.
 A. them B. those C. it D. that
- Which do you prefer, classical music or pop music? -_____. I prefer folk music.
 A. Either B. Both C. None D. Neither
- Why don't you trust and use old Tom? He is still as strong as _____ in the team.
 A. nobody B. anybody else C. everybody D. somebody else
- Are the new methods taking any effect? -Yes, _____ articles are stolen from our supermarket.
 A. few B. more C. some D. none
- During the meeting a young man cried out suddenly and threw his notebook at the chairman, _____ brought the room to disorder.
 A. it B. and which C. and that D. this
- I've just seen no more than one copy of Gone with the Wind in the bookshop opposite. Tom, go and

buy _____ back.

- A. one B. any C. it D. some

19. -Do you have _____ at home now? -No, we still have to get scores of eggs and some vegetables.

- A. nothing B. everything C. anything D. something

20. Nancy is expecting another baby and hopes _____ will be a boy.

- A. he B. that C. it D. there

21. Surely it's _____ with the big nose you mean, not _____!

- A. he, I B. him, me C. him, I D. he, me

22. The temperature can fall to -30°C . _____ is, 30°C below freezing point.

- A. Which B. It C. That D. This

23. -The exam was easy, wasn't it? -Yes, but I don't think _____ could pass it.

- A. somebody B. everybody C. anybody D. nobody

24. Cut the apple into halves so that the twins may each get _____ half.

- A. every B. each C. another D. either

25. _____ of us can do everything, but all of us can do _____.

- A. None, something B. Some, everything C. Few, something D. Few, nothing

26. -May I help you with some gloves, sir? -Yes, I'd like to try those blue _____.

- A. one B. ones C. pair D. two

27. Of all my friends _____ will be able to persuade Tom to change his mind. He is so firm upon it.

- A. none B. nobody C. neither D. no one

28. -Is he content to accept our offered price?

-Yes. He cares more about the quality. Money is _____ to him.

- A. everything B. anything C. nothing D. something

29. I have no idea which was better, so I took _____ of them.

- A. both B. none C. all D. any

30. You mustn't always do _____ as he asks you to do. He may be wrong sometimes.

- A. anything B. something C. nothing D. everything

31. I'm no painter, and to me, one painting is much like _____.

- A. another B. the other C. others D. one

32. I didn't want either of _____ hats and asked the salesman to show me _____.

- A. those, another B. two, the other C. all, the others D. both, others

33. The children were catching butterflies in the garden. Some caught a lot, and others caught _____ at all.

- A. nothing B. none C. no one D. neither

34. Thank you very much indeed. That's _____ of you.

- A. kindest B. most kind C. the kinder D. the most kind

35. Jack is a very likable fellow, but I've learned to take _____ he says with a grain of salt.

- A. something B. anything C. nothing D. everything

36. -I love you more than her, child. -You mean more than _____ love her or more than she loves _____?

- A. you, me B. I, you C. you, you D. I, me

练习 (二)、代 词

二、高考题选:

1. Was it during the Second World War _____ he died? (MET88)
A. that B. while C. in which D. then
2. Is _____ necessary to take off our shoes when we enter the lab? (MET88H)
A. everyone B. this C. her D. it
3. Is _____ possible to fly to the moon in a spaceship? (MET88)
A. now B. that C. it D. man
4. His Parents wouldn't let him marry anyone _____ family was poor. (MET88)
A. of whom B. whom C. of whose D. whose
5. _____ leaves the room last ought to turn off the light. (MET88)
A. Anyone B. The person C. Whoever D. Who
6. _____ writer is better known in China, Charles Dickens or Mark Twain? (MET88)
A. Which B. What C. Either D. Whether
7. ---Have you seen Tom and Mary? ---I haven't seen _____ of them. (MET88)
A. neither B. any C. either D. all
8. Is _____ necessary to complete the design before National Day? (MET89)
A. this B. that C. it D. he
9. All _____ is needed is a supply of oil. (MET89)
A. the thing B. that C. what D. which
10. His camera is more expensive than _____. (MET89)
A. hers B. her C. it D. its
11. I don't think _____ possible to master a foreign language without much memory work. (MET90)
A. this B. that C. its D. it
12. _____ of them knew about the plan because it was kept in a secret. (MET90)
A. Each B. Any C. No one D. None
13. He paid the boy ¥10 for washing ten windows, most of _____ hadn't been cleaned for at least a year. (MET90)
A. these B. those C. that D. which
14. Kate and her sister went to holiday with a cousin of _____. (MET90)
A. their B. theirs C. her D. hers
15. I invited Tom and Ann to dinner, but _____ of them came. (NMET91)
A. neither B. both C. either D. none
16. She heard a terrible noise, _____ brought her heart into her mouth. (MET91)
A. it B. which C. this D. that
17. We couldn't eat in a restaurant because _____ of us had _____ money on us. (MET91)
A. all; no B. any; no C. none; any D. no one; any
18. These plants are watered _____. (NMET91)
A. each other day B. every other day C. each of two days D. every of two days
19. Alice received an invitation from her boss, _____ came as a surprise. (NMET91)
A. it B. that C. which D. he
20. Does _____ matter if he can't finish the job on time?
A. this B. that C. he D. it
21. Mr. Zhang gave the textbooks to all the pupils except _____ who had already taken them. (MET92)
A. the ones B. ones C. some D. the others
22. There're so many kinds of tape-recorders on sale that I can't make up my mind _____ to buy. (MET92)
A. what B. which C. how D. where
23. Although he's wealthy, he spends _____ on clothes. (NME792)
A. little B. few C. a little D. a few
24. In the dark street, there wasn't a single person _____ she could turn for help. (MET92)
A. that B. who C. from whom D. to whom
25. _____ he said at the meeting astonished everybody present. (MET93)
A. What B. That C. The fact D. The matter

26. ---Would you like some wine? ---Yes, just _____. (MET93)
 A. little B. very little C. a little D. little bit
27. Tom's mother kept telling him that he should work harder, but _____ didn't help. (MET93)
 A. he B. which C. she D. it
28. ---Is _____ here? ---No, Bob and Tim have asked for leave. (MET93)
 A. anybody B. somebody C. everybody D. nobody
29. ---Is your camera like Bill's and Ann's? ---No, but it's almost the same as _____. (NMET94)
 A. her B. yours C. them D. their
30. The weather turned out to be very good, _____ was more than we could expect. (NMET94)
 A. what B. which C. that D. it
31. _____ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language. (NMET95)
 A. There B. This C. That D. It
32. They were very tired, but _____ of them would stop to take a rest. (NMET95)
 A. any B. some C. none D. neither
33. I hope there are enough glasses for each guest to have _____. (NMET95)
 A. it B. those C. them D. one
34. ---When shall we meet again? --Make it _____ day you like; it's all the same to me. (NMET96)
 A. one B. any C. another D. some
35. Tom felt that he knew everybody's business better than they knew it _____. (NMET96)
 A. themselves B. oneself C. itself D. himself
36. I agree with most of what you said, but I don't agree with _____. (NMET97)
 A. everything B. anything C. something D. nothing
37. Sarah has read lots of stories by American writers, Now she would like to read _____ stories by writers from _____ countries. (NMET97)
 A. some; any B. other; some C. some; other D. other; other
38. It was about 600 years ago _____ the first clock with a face and an hour hand was made. (NMET97)
 A. that B. until C. before D. when
39. I hate _____ when people talk with their mouths full. (NMET98)
 A. it B. that C. these D. them
40. Dr. Black comes from either Oxford or Cambridge. I can't remember _____. (NMET98)
 A. where B. there C. which D. hat
41. Why do you want a new job _____ you've got such a good one already? (NMET98)
 A. that B. where C. which D. when
42. It was only when I reread his poems recently _____ I began to appreciate their beauty. (NMET98)
 A. until B. that C. then D. so
43. Few pleasures can equal _____ of a cool drink on a hot day. (NMET99)
 A. some B. any C. that D. those
44. If you want to change for a double--room you'll have to pay _____ \$15. (NMET2000)
 A. another B. other C. more D. each
45. ---Why don't we take a little break? ---Didn't we just have _____? (NMET2000)
 A. it B. that C. one D. this
46. It is the ability to do the job _____ matters not where you come from or what you are. (NMET2000)
 A. one B. that C. what D. it
47. If this dictionary is not yours, _____ can it be? (NMET2001)
 A. what else B. who else C. which else's D. who else's
48. Many people have helped with canned food, however, the food bank needs _____ for the poor. (2001 春招)
 A. more B. much C. many D. most
49. The Parkers bought a new house but _____ will need a lot of work before they can move in. (NMET2001)
 A. they B. it C. one D. which
50. ---He was nearly drowned once. (2002 春招)
 ---When was _____?
 ---_____ was in 1998 when he was in middle school.
 A. that; it B. this; this C. this; it D. that; this

语法复习十四：代 词

一、强化训练：

1. D 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. A 11. D 12. D 13. C 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. C 18. C 19. B 20. C 21. B 22. C 23. B 24. D 25. A 26. B 27. A 28. C 29. A 30. D 31. A 32. A 33. B 34. B 35. D 36. A

二、高考题选：

1. A 这是一个强调句式的一般疑问句。
2. D it 是形式主语，to 不定式是真正主语。
3. C 参看 2 题。
4. D family 与先行词 anyone 之间是所属关系。
5. C 在主语从句中，whoever 充当主语，指代人，相当于 anyone who。而 C 项 who 也可引导名词性从句，但它具体指"是谁"。
6. A 特殊疑问句中的选择，用 which。
7. C 前一句只提到两个人。neither, either, both 仅用于表述两者的情况，而 any, all 表述多者的情况，且 I haven't seen either of them 相当于 I have seen neither of them。
8. C 可参看 2、3 题。
9. B all 是先行词，that 引导定语从句，且 all that=what。
10. A His camera 是句子的主语，也是信息词，应填名词性的物主代词 hers，它相当于 her camera。
11. D it 是形式宾语，to master... 是真正宾语。此句还可说成 I don't think it is possible to...。可参看 2、3、8 题。
12. D A、B 项不符合句意。C 项 no one 后不接 of 短语。
13. D which 是定语从句中的关系代词，指代上文的 windows。A、B、C 项不能引导定语从句，且填进去后，两个分句缺少连词。
14. B 可参看 10 题。
15. A 前文提到邀请两个人，两个人都没来，故用 neither 参看 7 题。
16. B which 引导非限定性定语从句。which 指代前面一句话。如果两个分句是由 and 连接，则 A、C、D 项也对。
17. C A 项中的 all 放在否定句中，是部分否定，与上文 we couldn't eat in a restaurant 矛盾，B 项不符语法，n 项 no one 后不接 of 短语，且只指代人。
18. B every other day 每隔一天，是习惯用法。
19. C which 在非限定性定语从句中指代前面一句话。可参看 16 题。
20. D 考生非常熟悉 It doesn't matter 这一句型，该题现在是一般疑问句，it 是 matter 的主语，if 引导条件状语从句。
21. A C、D 项不能做定语从句的先行词来指代上文的 the pupils，只能用 the ones，因为它被限定性定语从句所修饰，表特指。该句的意思是："张先生把教科书分给了所有的学生，那些已经拿走了的学生除外。"
22. B 原题中的 so many kinds of tape-recorders 暗示考生要买的是录音机，故排除 A 项。因为有这么多种类，因此不能决定买哪个。C、D 项是连接副词，不能做 buy 的宾语。
23. A B、D 项应排除，它们指代可数名词的复数。全句意为："虽然他很富有，但很少花钱买衣服。"故 C 项不符句意。
24. D turn at sb. for help 是惯用法，在定语从句中把 to 提前与 whom 构成介词+关系代词。
25. A 主语从句中缺少宾语，故 what 充当。
26. C 原题中的答语 Yes 暗示考生应选表示肯定意义的 a little。A、B 项表示否定意义。
27. D it 指代前面一句话。因有 but，故前后为并列句，不用关系代词(which)只用代词 it。
28. C Is everybody here?"都到齐了吗"，Is anybody here?"这里有人吗?"B 项 some body 可用在表示征求对方意见，并希望得到对方肯定回答的问句里。D 项不符原题句意。
29. B 参看 10、14 题。

30. B 参看 16、19 题。

31. D it 是形式主语, that 从句是真正主语。如果 fact 前有 the 修饰, 就可选 B 或 C 项, that 引导同位语从句。

32. C but 是关键词, 表转折, 该句意为"他们非常疲劳, 但没有一个人愿意停下来休息一会儿。"

33. D one 指代 one of the glasses, 且 each 一词是信息词。该句意思是: "我希望有足够的玻璃杯, 以便每位客人有一个"。

34. B one day 表示"某一天", 可用在一般过去时, 当它用在将来时的句中时, 可与 some day 互换。another day 指另一天。原题中的 It's all the same to me 和 you like 是信息句, 可暗示考生, 只能选 any day, 即"你喜欢定在哪天都行, 或随便哪一天都行。"

35. A themselves; 是 they 的反身代词。

36. A 从上文"我同意你说的大部分", 可知, 下文应填 everything 表示部分否定。B 项填入后该句为全否定。C 项不用在否定句中。D 项填入后, 该句成为肯定句。故 B、C、D 项是错误的。

37. C 从上文"Sarah 已经读了许多美国作家写的故事", 可知, 下文是"她现在想读一些由别的国家的作家写的故事"。A 项中 any 用在肯定句中表示"任何一个", 与后面的 countries 不符。B、D 项不符原句的逻辑。

38. A 这是一个强调句式。如果把 It was...that 去掉, 该句子意思完整。不缺任何成份。

39. A 该题考查 it 作形式宾语的用法。四个选项均为代词, 只有 it 作先行代词时, 本身没有具体意义, 而只是帮助把真正的宾语移到后部去。句中 it 的作用是代替它后面的宾语从句 when people talk with their mouths full, 故正确答案为 A。

40. C 该题考查在省略的宾语从句中连接代词的用法。A、B 项为副词, 不可作及物动词 remember 的宾语, 应先排除。指某一范围的"哪一个"需用连接代词 which, 前一个分句中的 from either Oxford or Cambridge 已限定了范围, 故答案选 C。

41. D 该题考查引导从句的关系连词的用法。that 和 which 作为关系代词引导定语从句必须在从句中充当某一成份; where 作关系副词引导定语从句在从句中作状语, 先行词必须是表示地点的名词, 故应排除 A、B、C。由题于从句与主句所表示的逻辑关系考虑, 此空应填表示因果关系的从属连词 when, 这时 when=since; for, 意为"由于"、"既然", 答案为 D。

42. B 该句考查强调结构。"It+be+被强调部分+that 从句"是 it 的强调句型, 如果强调的是时间、地点、原因等状语, 别后面接 that 引导的从句, 而不能用 when, where, because 等词来引导, 因此答案为 B。再如:

It was when I was thirty--five that I got married and had a family.

It was when we got to the station that it began to rain. 参看 1 题。

43. C 该题考查不定代词的替代用法。在进行比较时要用同类的事物相比, 排除 A、B。按照英语习惯用法, that 可以代替一个单数名词或一个不可数名词, 以避免重复前面提到过名词。that 前面没有任何修饰词, 后面的介词主要是 of。由空白后表示所属关系的语境可以确定此空应填 that, 代替 pleasure, 故答案选 C。

44. A another 在此是不定代词, 意为"再...个", pay to another \$15. 意为"再付 15 美元。more 应放在 \$15 之后。

45. C one 不定代词指代上文的 break。
46. B It is...that 为强调结构。
47. D 根据句意, "不是你的, 可能是另外谁的呢?" 所以答案是 D。
48. A 根据句意, "还再需要一些", 故选 A。
49. B 代替 the new house。
50. A。

语法复习十五：名 词

(一) 考纲要求

名词应掌握以下内容：分清名词的可数性与不可数性；可数名词有单复数，有些名词只有复数；物质名词、抽象名词不可数但可以具体量化使用；名词所有格和 of 格的语言现象；名词直接作定语；国家名词的正确使用；名词词义的区别和搭配；单位名词的搭配；名词前的修饰语 so, as, quite 等；time 及常考点。

(二) 命题导向

名词的“可数”与“不可数”是高考命题的热点之一。不可数名词前不能与不定冠词连用，之后不能加-s。有些抽象名词却有复数形式，但意义与原来词不同。有些可数名词复数有两个意思，一个与单数意义相同，另一个和单数含义不同，高考中这些含义很可能成为考查的内容。词语的固定搭配及名词作定语也是高考命题的注意点。

(三) 知识概要

英语的名词分为专有名词和普通名词两大类。专有名词是指个人、团体、地方、机构或事物等所专有的名称，它的第一个字母必须大写。如：Einstein, Beijing, Asia 等。普通名词是指一类人、一类事物、某种物质抽象概念的名称，可分为：个体名词（可数，如：worker, father, book, tree, school 等）；集体名词（可数，如：people, family, class, team 等）；物质名词（不可数，如：iron, paper, snow, water, chalk, gold 等）；抽象名词（不可数，如：life, thought, idea, strength 等）。

注意：可数、不可数是英文名词和中文名词的一个重要差异——即学习的重点。而很多英语名词具有双重性。即，名词的类别不是固定不变的，它们会根据词义的变化和场合的不同而相互转换，其名词类别的转换可归纳如下：

1、个体名词转抽象名词或抽象名词转个体名词

e.g. Our school is not far from my home. (个体) 我们学校离我家不远。

School is over at six. (抽象) 六点钟放学。

2、物质名词转个体名词或个体名词转物质名词

e.g. He broke a piece of glass. (物质) 他打破了一块玻璃。

He broke a glass. (个体) 他打破了一个杯子。

3、个体名词转专有名词

e.g. His father is a teacher. (个体) 他父亲是个教师。

“What are you doing there?” Father asked. (专有) “你在那儿干什么？”父亲问道。

(四) 名词的数

名词分为可数（有单、复数形式）和不可数名词（只有单数形式）。

1、可数名词单数变复数：

① 一般加 s : lesson → lessons, pen → pens

② 以 s, x, ss, ch, sh, o 结尾的加 es : buses, boxes, classes, watches, brushes, hero → heroes

但有些以 o 结尾的名词，是加 s 构成复数：kilo → kilos, piano → pianos, radio → radios, photo → photos, zoo → zoos

③ 以辅音字母 + y 结尾的改 y 为 i，再加 es : city → cities, story → stories

④ 以 f 或 fe 结尾的，一般将 f 或 fe 改为 v，再加 es : knife → knives, leaf → leaves

但有些以 f 结尾的名词，是在 f 后加 s，构成复数形式：belief → beliefs, roof → roofs, safe (保险箱) → safes, proof (证据) → proofs, chief → chiefs, handkerchief → handkerchiefs

2、有些名词，不按上述规则构成其复数形式，有以下几种情况：

① 单复数形式相同: Chinese, Japanese, deer, sheep

② 不规则变化: man → men, woman → women, goose → geese, foot → feet, tooth → teeth, child → children, mouse → mice, ox → oxen。但是, German → Germans

③ 复合名词的复数形式: editor-in-chief → editors-in-chief, daughter-in-law → daughters-in-law, grown-up → grown-ups, woman teacher → women teachers, man driver → men drivers

3、注意以下几个名词单复数问题

① 物质名词一般不用复数形式,但有些物质名词要用复数形式来表示不同的类别,如: fishes 各种鱼, fruits 各种水果, steels 各种钢材。

② 物质名词表示数量时,一般用表示数量的短语来表示。如: *a cup of tea, three bags of apples, four pieces of bread*。

③ 有些抽象名词的复数形式表示不同的含义。如: work (工作) → works (著作), arm (手臂) → arms (军火), glass (玻璃) → glasses (眼镜), cloth (布) → clothes (衣服)。

④ 定冠词加上姓氏的复数形式,表示全家人或夫妇二人;姓氏的复数形式前不加冠词,则表示若干个姓...的人。如: the Wangs 王家, three Wangs 三个姓王的。

⑤ 只用作单数的复数形式的名词。如: physics, mathematics, news, the United States

⑥ 有些名词形似单数,但实为复数。如: police, people, cattle

⑦ 有些名词如被看作整体时就作单数用,如被看作组成该集体的各个成员时就作复数用。如: class, family, couple, audience, government, public

⑧ 有些抽象名词在具体化时,可以复数形式出现。表示特指时,可和定冠词连用;表示“某种”或“一次”意义时,可和不定冠词连用。如: How did you smooth away the *difficulties*? (指各种具体困难); It is *a great pleasure* to talk with you.; What *a surprise*!

(五) 名词的所有格

名词的所有格在句中表示所有关系,作定语用。

1、有生命名词的所有格一般在词尾加上“'”或“'s”。如 Tom's bike, Engle's (Engle's) works, a works' school, Women's Day, the editor-in-chief's office

2、如果一个事物为两个人所有,只在后一个名词的词尾加“'s”,如果不是共有,就要在两个名词的词尾都加上“'s”。如 Tom and Mike's room. (共有), Tom's and Mike's books. (不共有)。

3、表示时间、距离、国家、城市的无生命名词,可以在词尾加“'s”或“'”表示所有格,如: today's papers, ten minutes' walk

4、表示店铺或某人的家时,常在名词所有格之后省去 shop, house, home。如: the tailor's

5、无生命名词的所在格通常用 of 短语来表示。如: the window of the room

6、表示有生命的名词有时也可用 of 短语来表示所有关系,而且当该名词带有较长的定语时。如: the teachers of the No. 1 Middle School.

7、双重所有格结构前的被修饰名词通常指整体中的部分或一个,双重所有格只能用于有生命的名词,这个名词是确定的。被修饰名词前有不定冠词、指示代词、疑问代词、不定代词或数词等限定词时,一般只能用双重所有格。如: an old friend of my uncle's, a daughter of Mrs Green's, the house of one of my friends

(六) 名词的普通格作定语

表材料、地点、用途、性质、泛指时间、整体等普通名词可以作定语,一般用单数形式。

e.g. stone figures (石像); paper money (纸币); country music (乡村音乐); table cloth (桌布); river bank (河岸); school gate (校门口); book stores (书店); traffic lights (交通灯); summer

holidays (暑假); evening dress (晚礼服)。

但在个别情况下, 也有需用复数的。

e.g. sports meet (运动会); the United States government (美国政府); students reading-room (学生阅览室); goods train (货车); two men doctors (两个男医生)。

练习、名词

1. The ____ of the room were covered with ____.
A. roofs, leafs B. roofs, leaves C. rooves, leafs D. rooves, leaves
2. There are three ____ in our factory.
A. woman doctors B. women doctors C. woman doctor D. women doctor
3. Which do you prefer ____ or ____?
A. potatos, tomatos B. potatos, tomatoes C. potatoes, tomatos D. potatoes, tomatoes
4. They are ____ of different presses(出版社). Now they are having a meeting in one of the ____ office.
A. editor-in-chiefs, editors-in-chief's B. editors-in-chief, editor-in-chief's
C. editors-in-chiefs, editor's-in-chief's D. editors-in-chief, editors-in-chief's
5. The ant has two ____.
A. stomaches B. stomachs C. stomach D. stomachs
6. He doesn't like ____ for supper.
A. chick B. chicken C. chickens D. chicks
7. It was ____ hot weather that many of us went swimming.
A. so B. such C. so as D. such a
8. ____ wonderful space they saw on the room!
A. How B. How a C. What D. What a
9. We know ____ travels not so fast as light.
A. sound B. sounds C. the sounds D. a sound
10. My family raise a lot of ____, including two ____.
A. cattle, cows B. cows, cattle C. cattles, cows D. cow, cattles
11. A number of soldiers ____ at he camp gate (军营门口) .
A. have gathered B. has gathered C. is D. was
12. The Browns have spent a large ____ of money on their new car.
A. deal B. amount C. number D. size
13. ____ work has been done to improve the people's living standard.
A. Many B. A great many C. A great deal of D. A number of
14. Mr Li shook ____ warmly with a friend.
A. hand B. a hand C. hands D. the hands
15. Two ____, please.
A. coffee B. coffees C. cup of coffee D. cups coffee
16. I can't pay as ____ as he asked for.
A. high price a B. high price C. a high price D. high a price
17. ____ knowledge of space develops rapidly.
A. Man's B. Men's C. Mens' D. Person's
18. I stayed at ____.
A. Xiao Wang's B. Wang's home C. the Wangs D. home of Wang
19. Sister Carrie works in a ____ factory.
A. shoes B. shoses C. shoe D. shoe's
20. Have you ever read ____?

- A. today newspaper B. newspaper today C. newspaper of today D. today's newspaper
21. Two ____ walk didn't made me tired. A. hour B. hours C. hour's D. hours'
22. The mother over there is ____ mother.
A. Julia and Mary B. Julia and Mary's C. Julia's and Mary's D. Julia's and Mary
23. Li Ming's handwriting is better than ____ in the class.
A. anyone's B. anyone else C. anyone's else's D. anyone else's
24. The children are playing ____ on the ____.
A. sand, sand B. sands, sands C. sand, sands D. sands, sand
25. If these trousers are too big, buy a smaller ____.
A. set B. one C. copy D. pair
26. Tom usually takes a ____ in bus on rainy days. A. walk B. ride C. trip D. travel
27. We have no ____ about where she has gone.
A. information B. news C. message D. flash
28. Food and ____ are daily necessities (需要) for the people.
A. cloth B. clothe C. clothes D. clothing
29. My ____ of hearing is not so good as it used to be. A. strength B. sense C. power D. skill
30. The ____ caused by carelessness ____ yesterday. Many workers were killed.
A. incident, was happened B. matter, happened
C. event, was taken place D. accident, took place
31. The room was so quiet that she could hear the ____ of her heart.
A. beating B. ways C. knocking D. striking
32. ____ has been told not to throw waste things anywhere.
A. The public B. People C. Women D. Man
33. He was an ____ in the government ____.
A. office, official B. official, office C. officer, office D. official, officer
34. There are several ____ in this novel who are different in ____.
A. character, character B. characters, characters C. character, characters D. characters, character
35. We visited him ____ when he was in hospital.
A. every other days B. each other day C. every other day D. every two day
36. My friend will return in ____.
A. one day or two B. a day or two C. one day or two D. a or two days
37. ____ is always difficult for me.
A. Translation B. Translate C. The translation D. A translation
38. ____ of this novel is excellent, quite to my surprise.
A. Translation B. Translate C. The translation D. A translation
39. The police ____ looking into the matter now. A. be B. is C. are D. are going to
40. The Chinese are ____ brave and hard working people. A. the B. a C. / D. one
41. No news ____ good news. A. is B. are C. have D. has
42. Maths still ____ very difficult for me, though I have done my best.
A. looks B. seems C. is D. are
43. "Where ____ my trousers?" the boy asked. A. is B. was C. were D. are
44. How happy they are! Obviously, they are ____.

- A. in nice spirits B. in nice spirit C. in high spirits D. in high spirit
45. I saw many ____ seated in the corner reading something.
A. Japanese B. Japaneses C. of Japanese D. of Japaneses
46. Father went to his doctor for ____ about his heart trouble.
A. an advice B. advice C. advices D. the advices
47. We are ____ and they are ____.
A. Englishmen, Germans B. Englishmen, German C. Englishmans, Germans D. Englishmen, Germen
48. ____ are made of ____.
A. A glass, a glass B. Glasses, glass C. The glass, the glass D. Glasses, glasses
49. I'll have to buy ____ trousers. A. a B. two C. a pair of D. a couple of
50. There are two ____ in our class. A. Liu B. Lius C. Liu's D. Lius'
51. ____ is needed in cold countries.
A. A lot of clothes B. Much clothing C. Many a cloth D. Lots of clothes
52. They are ____.
A. mathematics student B. mathematic students
C. students in mathematics D. mathematics students
53. The laboratory assistant recorded the ____ reactions (反应) .
A. mouses' B. mice C. mices' D. mice's
54. This letter was sent by ____.
A. my father friend B. my father friend's C. a friend of my father's D. a friend of my father
55. Ten years had passed. I found she had ____.
A. a little white hair B. some white hair C. a few white hair D. a few white hairs
56. I have made ____ with Billy. A. friends B. friend C. a friend D. the friend
57. The population of Beijing is ____ than that of Xi'an. A. more B. larger C. fewer D. small
58. There are thirty-two ____ in our school.
A. woman teacher B. women teacher C. women teachers D. woman teachers
59. He had tried everything but it made little ____ .
A. use B. good C. difference D. result
60. You must get there within half an hour. There should be no ____ in sending the blood to the dying man.
A. wait B. delay C. time D. hurry
61. Enough of it! Nobody here thinks what you are saying should make any ____ .
A. excuse B. sense C. use D. value
62. -How dare you play on such thin ice? -Playing on ice is not my ____ of spare time.
A. idea B. thought C. mind D. intention
63. Helen said she would like to go to Atlanta by air, but I wonder if she has enough money to pay for the ____ .
A. travel B. tourism C. journey D. course
64. One splendid mountain ____ followed another during our journey from Mieheel more to Rurunz.
A. view B. glance C. screen D. scene
65. The new law will come into ____ on the day it is passed. (1999 上海)
A. effect B. use C. service D. existence

66. When you play' football, what _____do you play?
A. situation B. place C. part D. position
67. It's important for us to employ a word or a phrase according to the_____in language studies.
A. situation B. expression C. condition D. translation
68. I wrote him a letter to show my _____of his thoughtfulness.
A. achievement B. agreement C. view D. appreciation
69. One of the advantages of living on the top floor of a high-rise is that you can get a good_____.
A. sight B. scene C. view D. look
70. Nowadays natural gas, wind and other forms of _____are widely used in the country.
A. energy B. force C. power D. materials
71. _____with foreign countries can bring us much information about the world.
A. Contrast B. Competition C. Contact D. Combination
72. We all know that_____speak louder than words.
A. movements B. performances C. operations D. actions
73. We have worked out the plan and now we must put it into _____.(NMET1997 38)
A. fact B. reality C. practice D. deed
74. We've missed the last bus. I'm afraid we have no _____but to take a taxi.(Met 1993 ,33)
A. way B. choice C. possibility D. selection
75. He dropped the _____and broke it . (Met 1993, 38)
A. cup of coffee B. coffee's cup C. cup for coffee D. coffee cup
76. Here's my card. Let's keep in _____. (NMET1994 ,33)
A. touch B. relation C. connection D. friendship
77. He gained his _____by printing _____of famous writers.(NMET1995,40)
A. wealth; work B. wealths ; works C. wealths; work D. wealth; works
78. I'll look into the matter as soon as possible , just have a little _____.(MET 1996 ,10)
A. wait B. time C. patience D. rest
79. If by any chance someone comes to see me, ask them to leave a _____.(NMET1997,18)
A. message B. letter C. sentence D. notice
80. These football players had no strict _____until they joined our club. (1997.上海 20)
A. practice B. education C. exercise D. training
81. Many countries are increasing their use of natural gas, wind and other forms of _____.(1996.上海.15)
A. energy B. source C. power D. material
82. You'll find this map of great _____in helping you to get round London.(NMET 1998 21)
A. price B. cost C. value D. usefulness
83. We all know that _____speak louder than words.(1999.上海 24)
A. movements B. performances C. operations D. actions
84. My parents always let me have my own _____of living. (1999.上海 25)
A. way B. method C. manner D. fashion

语法复习十五：名 词

1~5 BBDDD 6~10 BBCAA 11~15 ABCCB 16~20 DAACD 21~25 DBDCD
26~30 BADBD 31~35 AABDC 36~40 BACCB 41~45 ABDCA 46~50 BABCB
51~55 BDDCD 56~60 ABCCB 61~65 BACAA 66~70 DADCA 71~75 CDCBD
76~80 ADCAD 81~84 ACDA

语法复习十六：数 词

高考重点要求：

- 1. 掌握基数词、序数词、分数词、倍数、百分数、年月日、钟点、年龄、序号的基本用法。
- 2. 掌握不定数量词、约数词的表达方法。

数词在各个题项中，单选、阅读、听力、写作中发挥着很强的作用，往往用以说明事实的精确性和可信性。数词是由两大部分构成的即基数词和序数词，而其他数字表示法如分数，小数等均由这两大部分的不同组合而构成。

(一) 基数词：表示数目的词为基数词，它的构成如下表：

| 范 围 | 特 点 | 实 例 |
|---------|------------------|---|
| 1~12 | 无规律 | one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve |
| 13~19 | 以 teen 为结尾 | thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen |
| 20~90 | 以 ty 结尾 | twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety |
| 21~99 | 十位与个位之间要加连字符 “-” | twenty-five, sixty-five, ninety-nine |
| 101~999 | 百位与十位之间通常用 and | three hundred and twenty-five (美语中常将 and 省略) |
| 千以上 | | 6275—six thousand two hundred and seventy-five; 1200—twelve hundred |

(二) 序数词：表示顺序的数词为序数词，它的构成如下表：

| 范 围 | 特 点 | 实 例 |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 1~19 | 各基数词尾加 th | 其中七个例外：first, second, third, fifth, eighth, ninth, twelfth, 其余，如：four — forth, six — sixth, nineteen — nineteenth |
| 20,30~90 | 把 y 变 i 后加 eth | twentieth, fortieth, ninetieth |
| 21 以后多位数 | 最后一个数用序数词，其余用基数词 | 21st — twenty-first, 110th — one hundred and tenth |

(三) 数词的用法：

1.英语中年月日、点钟、序数词、分数词、算式列表

| 示 例 | 英 语 表 示 法 |
|---------------|---|
| 2001. 6. 30 | June 30,2001 30June,2001 30thJune, 2001 |
| 7: 25 | seven twenty-five twenty-five past even |
| 12:54 | twelve fifty four six to one |
| 9:15 | nine fifteen a quarter past nine |
| 2:30 | two thirty half past two |
| 21:50 | twenty-one fifty 9:50p.m. |
| 第 21 | twenty-first |
| 第 123 | one hundred and twenty-third |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | a half |

| | |
|----------------|---|
| $2\frac{2}{5}$ | two and two-fifths |
| 20% | 20 per cent 20 percent |
| 第七路公共汽车 | Bus Number Seven |
| 第 201 房间 | Room 201 |
| 人民路 153 号 | 153 Renmin Road |
| $4+8=12$ | Four plus eight is twelve |
| $11-7=4$ | Eleven minus seven is four. |
| $6\times 5=30$ | Six times five is thirty. |
| $20\div 5=4$ | twenty divided by five is four. |
| $A>B$ | A is more than B. |
| $A<B$ | A is less than B. |
| $A\approx B$ | A is approximately (近似地, 大约) equals to B. |
| $A\neq B$ | A is not equal to B. |

2.约数表示法列表

| 含义 | 英语表达 | 例句 |
|---------|--------------|---|
| 大于某数 | more than | He has lived here for more than twenty years. |
| | over | she is over fifty. |
| | or more | There're thirty people or more in the meeting-room. |
| 小于某数 | less than | I have less than (not more than)fifty dollars. |
| | under | Children under seven are not allowed to enter. |
| | below | He would not sell it for below a hundred fifty dollars. |
| 大约 (某数) | or less | The coat might cost him sixty dollars or less. |
| | nearly | She is nearly fifty now. |
| | almost | Its almost three o'clock. |
| | up to | Up to ten men can sleep in this tent. |
| | or | He spent four or five days writing the article. |
| | or so | The distance is twenty miles or so. |
| | about | I visited that village about three years ago. |
| | some | Their team has some four or five players. |
| | more or less | The container can hold more or less twenty pounds of water. |
| | around/round | Let's make it round/around eight o'clock. |

3.不定数量词“多”的表示法列表

| 被修饰名词的数 | 英语表达 | 汉译 |
|---------|--|-------|
| 修饰可数名词 | dozens of | 几十、许多 |
| | scores of | 许多 |
| | many, a good(great) many, many a (饰单数可数名词) | 许多、大量 |
| | hundreds of | 数以百计 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-------|
| | thousands of ,thousands upon thousands of | 成千上万 |
| | millions of | 数百万 |
| | billions of | 亿万 |
| 修饰不可数名词 | much , a great (good)deal of , a large amount of ,large amounts of | 许多、大量 |
| 修饰可数名词或不可数名词 | a lot of /lots of ,plenty of, a large quantity of , large quantities of | 许多、大量 |

练习、数 词

- Two __died of cold last winter.
A. hundreds old people B. hundred old people
C. hundreds old peoples D. hundred old peoples
- He was only in__ at the time.
A. his 20's B. the 20's C. his twenties D. the twenties
- The two great men wrote those letters in__ .
A. 1870's B. 1879s C. the 1870's D. the 1870
- I wonder if I can ask him__ time.
A. four B. fourth C. the fourth D. a fourth
- He came out__ in the track events.
A. first B. one C. the first D. the one
- It was in 1939 that __broke out.
A. World War Second B. the World War Second C. Second World War D. World War II
- You'll have to spend __writing your report here.
A. one day or two days B. one day or two C. a day or two D. two days or one
- He cut the cake__ .
A. in halves B. in half C. into halves D. into half
- The earth is nearly__ the moon.
A. 50 time the size of B. 50 times the size of C. 50 times as size as D. 50 times as that of
- Either you or the headmaster __the prizes for these gifted students at the meeting.
A. is handing in B. are to hand out C. are handing in D. is to hand out
- __of the population here are peasants.
A. 20 percents B. 20 percent C. the 20 percent D. the 20 percents
- It's about__ , the thickness of a human hair.
A. two-fifteenth B. two-fifteenths C. two fifteen D. two fifteens
- The price of such material was reduced__ .
A. by 18 percent B. to 18 percent C. at 18 percent D. for 18 percent
- South of the equator, 81 percent of the surface of the earth__ water.
A. is B. are C. was D. were

15. They sold ___boxes of such sweets last week.
A. four dozen B. four dozens C. four dozens of D. four dozen of
16. It took me ___ days to finish drawing a beautiful horse.
A. a half dozen B. half a dozen C. haft dozens D. half dozen
17. ___people were sent there to help fight against the flood.
A. Three scores of B. Three score of C. Three score D. Three scores
18. Don't leave you work,___ .
A. done half B. half done C. a half done D. done a half
19. Nobody can do two things well ___ .
A. at one time B. at once C. one time D. once
20. He has___ books in his study.
A. several thousands B. some thousands of C. some thousands D. some thousand of
21. On National day___ people take part in all kinds of celebration.
A. hundreds of millions of B. millions of hundred of
C. hundreds millions of D. millions hundreds of
22. He has lived at___ for 30 years.
A. No. 101 Heping Street B. 101 Heping Street C. Heping Street 101 D. Heping street No. 101
23. You can find him in___ .
A. Room 201 B. 201 Room C. the Room 20 D. the 201 Room
24. It's___ walk from here to my school.
A. two - hours B. two hours C. two - hour D. a two - hour
25. It was in___ when he was already in ___ that he went to Yan'an.
A. the 1940s, the 40s B. the 1940s, his forties C. 1940's, his forties D. the 1940's, his 40s
26. He went to the market and bought ___eggs and some meat.
A. three dozen of B. three dozen C. three dozens D. three dozens of
27. Shortly after the accident two ___police were sent to the spot to keep order.
A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of (MET92 29)
28. Mr Smith ___me to buy several ___eggs for the dinner.
A. asked, dozen B. suggested, dozens of C. had, dozen D. persuaded, dozens of ('94 上海)
29. ___of the land in that district ___covered with trees and grass.
A. Two fifth, is B. Two fifth, are C. Two fifths , is D. Two fifths, are (2000 上海)
30. Two ___died of cold last winter.
A. hundreds old people B. hundred old people
C. hundred old peoples D. hundred old peoples ('88MET.15)
31. It is not rare in ___that people in ___fifties are going to university for further education.
A. 90s, the B. the 90s, / C. 90s, their D. the 90s, their ('99 上海 6)
32. -Have you seen many sheep in the distance ? -Yes, _____.
A. thousand of them B. two thousands of them
C. two thousand of them D. two thousand them

语法复习十六：数 词

1. B
2. C 表示"几十"的数词的复数与所有格代词一起来用以表示人的年龄, 本句为"二十多岁"。
3. C 定冠词"the"和数的复数形式在一起表示年代。
4. D 序数词前面加不定冠词表示"又一次"(已经四次了)
5. A 这里"first"有人说起副词作用, 可以看成表语, 也可以看做一种"取得第一名"的习惯用法。
6. D 序数词和名词共同构成的专有名词还可以是 the Second World War 的形式。
7. C 只有 C 项为正确的表达方式, 或者也可以写成"one or two days". 再如: one hour and a half 或 one and a half hours.
8. B "in half"表示"分成一样大小的两半"。也可以说"cut...in two"
9. B 再如 twice the height(depth, width, weight, etc.)of
10. D either...or...连接主语用就近原则。be to hand out the prizes 意为"要颁发奖品"。
11. 答案为 B。百分比作修饰语, 前面不加冠词且不能加复数。
12. 答案为 B。分数做定语, 分子用基数词, 分母为序数词, 当分子大于 1 时, 分母用复数, 本题中, 其它表达方式均不正确。
13. 答案为 A。表增加或减少的数量的百分比, 用 by+百分数表示。
14. 答案为 A。不可数的名词的百分比用单数; 可数名词的百分比则用复数。C 项时态不对, 另如: 90 percent of the population here are peasants. 这个句子中 population 的意思是 people.
15. 答案为 A。"dozen"与数词或 many, several 等词连用时复数一般不加 s, 故 B、C 两项不选。此外, dozen 与数词连用做定语, 一般也不加 of. 当然也有例外: Place them in dozens on the table. dozens 表数量很多。Two dozen of these are wanted. dozen 后面有 of 因为有限定词 these, the 等。Dozens of people were here. dozens of 也表示"很多"。
16. 答案为 B。"半打"的表达方式一定要用"half a dozen"。
17. 答案为 B。score 做定语修饰名词用 a(three)score of, 而不用复数形式; 常用"scores of"为其复数形式, 意为"大量", 但有: three score and ten, a score or more
18. 答案为 B。"half"起副词作用, 修饰过去分词"done", 因为这个过去分词表状态, 故"half"应在"done"前。再如: well done, well known, 不用 a half 修饰 done, 故不选 C、B 两项。
19. B 意为"同时", 不是"立刻"。
20. B
21. A 如: tens of thousands of(小数在前, 大数在后)thousands and thousands of(两数一样大)。
22. B 居住的门牌号用介词 at+号数+街道名"。
23. A
24. 答案为 D。"walk"作为名词, 常与不定冠词连用。注意: 在表数量的合成词中, 名词部分为单数, 如: a two-year-old boy.
25. 答案为 B。"在 20 世纪 40 年代", 必须有定冠词"the". 此外, 年代后要加's 或 s。"他已经 40 多岁了"要用 in his forties。
26. 答案为 B。dozen 与数词或多或少 several, many 连用时, 复数不加 s。dozens of 表示数量很多, 在修饰有 these, the 等词限定的名词时, 可用 dozen of 的形式。如: three dozen of these eggs.
- 27.C 28.A 29.C 30.B 31.D 32.C

语法复习十七：介 词

介词又叫前置词，是一种虚词。介词分为三种，一种是简单介词，如 at, in, on, beside, to, for 等；另一种是短语介词，即由两个以上的词组组成的短语，如 in front of, because of, out of, instead of 等；还有一种叫二重介词，如 until after, from behind 等。

（一）介词的句法功能

介词不能独立在句中做成份，介词后必须与名词、代词、或动名词构成介词短语在句中充当一个成份，表示人、物、事件等与其它人、物、事件等之间的关系。

1、作定语：The book on the table is mine.

2、作状语：We have breakfast at seven. (表时间)；They were late for meeting because of the heavy rain. (表原因)；They started the machine by pressing the button. (表方法)

3、作表语：My dictionary is in the bag.

4、作宾语补足语：I found him in the office.

（二）主要介词区别

1、表示时间的 at, in, on: at 表示片刻的时间，如：at 8 o'clock，常用词组有：at noon, at night, at midnight, at the end of, at that time, at the beginning of, at the age of, at Christmas, at New Year 等。in 表示一段的时间，如：in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, in October, in 1998, in summer, in the past, in the future 等。on 总是跟日子有关，on Monday, on Christmas morning, on the following, on May Day, on a warm morning 等。

2、表示时间的 since 和 from: since 表示从过去到现在的一段时间的过程，常与现在完成时连用。from 表示从时间的某一点开始，不涉及与现在的关系。一般多与现在时、过去时、将来时连用。如：I hope to do morning exercises from today./ We have not seen each other since 1995.

3、表示时间的 in 和 after: 两者都表示“在（某个时间）之后”，区别在于 in 表示“在（一段时间）之后”，而 after 则表示“在（某一具体时间点之后）”，in 短语和将来时态连用，after 短语和过去时态或将来时态连用。如：We'll be back in three days./ After seven the rain began to fall./ What shall we do after graduation?

注意：after 有时也可以表示在一段时间之后（常用在过去时里）。如：After two months he returned.

4、表示地理位置的 in, on, to: in 表示在某范围内，on 指与什么毗邻，to 指在某环境范围之外。如：Changchun is in the northeast of China./ Mongolia is on the north of China./ Japan is to the east of China.

5、表示“在……上”的 on 和 in: on 只表示在某物的表面上，而用 in 表示占去某物一部分。如：There is a book on the piece of paper./ There is an interesting article in the newspaper./ He dug a hole in the wall.

6、表示“穿过……”的 through 和 across: through 表示从内部通过，与 in 有关；across 则表示从一端至另一端在表面上的通过，与 on 有关。如：Water flows through the pipe./ The old man walked across the street.

7、in the corner, on the corner, at the corner: in the corner 表示在角落里，in 指角的内面；

on the corner 表示“在角上”，on 指的不是内面，也不是外面，而含内外兼有之意；at the corner 指“在拐角处”，at 指的是拐角外附近的外面。如：The lamp stands in the corner of the room./ I met with him at the street corner./ He sat on the corner of the table.

8、in the end, at the end of, by the end of: in the end 作“最后”、“终于”解，可单独使用，后不接介词 of；at the end of 表示“在……末梢”，“到……尽头”，既可指时间，也可以指地上或物体。不可单独使用；by the end of 作“在……结束时”，“到……末为止”解，只能指时间。不可单独使用。如：In the end they reached a place of safety./ At the end of the road stands a beautiful garden./ They decided to have an English evening at the end of this week./ by the end of last month he had finished the novel.

9、表示“关于”的 about 和 on: 两者都有“关于”的意思，不过前者为一般用词，而后者为较正式的“论述”。如：He came to tell me about something important./ He wrote a book on science.

10、between, among: 一般说来，between 表示两者之间，among 用于三者或三者以上的中间。如：You are to sit between your father and me./ He is always happy among his classmates.

注意：但有时说的虽然是三个以上的人或东西，如果强调的是两两相互间接关系，适用于 between。如：Agreements were made between the different countries. 在谈到一些事物或一组事物，而把它们视为分居两边时用 between。如：The little valley lies between high mountains.。在谈事物间的差别时，总是用 between。如：They don't know the difference between wheat, oats and barley.

11、besides, except, but, except for: besides 指“除了……还有，再加上”。如：All went out besides me.; except 指“除了，减去什么”，不能放在句首。如：All went out except me.; but 与 except 意思近似，表示“除了……外”经常用在 no, all, nobody, anywhere, everything 等和其他疑问词后面。如：I never saw him reading anything but the newspaper.; except for 表示“如无……就，只是”表明理由细节。如：His diary is good except for a few spelling mistakes.。

12、表示“用”的 in 和 with: 表示工具的“用”，用 with，而表示材料、方式、方法、度量、单位、语言、声音等的“用”，用 in。如 He is writing a letter with a pen./ He wrote the letter in pencil./ We measured it in pounds./ Read the text in a loud voice./ Tell me the story in English.

13、in charge of 和 in the charge of: 两者都表示“由谁负责、照顾、管理”。区别在于：in charge of 后接被照管的人或物，而 in the charge of 后面则跟照管的人。如：Who is in charge of the project?/ The project is in the charge of an engineer.。

14、as, like: as 作“作为”、“以……地位或身份”解。如：Let me speak to you as a father. (事实是父亲); like 作“象……一样”解。如：Let me speak to you like a father. (事实上不是父亲)。

15、in front of 和 in the front of: in front of = before, 是“在……前面”的意思（不在某物内）；in the front of 则是“在……前部”的意思（在某物内）。如：There is a desk in front of the blackboard./ The boy sat in the front of the car.。

16、in, into: into 表示动向，不表示目的地或位置。如：We walked into the park.; in 通常表示位置。如：We walked in the park; in 和 drop, fall, put, throw, break 等终止性动词连用时，也可以表示动向。如：I have put the coin in (into) my pocket.我把硬币放进衣袋。

练习（一）、介 词

1. The teacher is writing ____ a piece of chalk on the blackboard while the students are writing ____ ink in exercise books. A. with, in B. in, with C. in, in D. with, with
2. The worker can make chairs ____ wood, and also can make paper ____ wood.
A. from, of B. of, from C. of, of D. from, from
3. Mary dropped in ____ Mr Smith, but he wasn't at home, so she went to drop in ____ Mr Smith's office. A. on, on B. at, at C. on, at D. at, on
4. The teacher is not only strict ____ his pupils but also strict ____ his own work.
A. with, with B. in, in C. in, with D. with, in
5. His grandfather died ____ the wound that the enemy soldier had given him .and then his grandmother died ____ hungry and cold. A. from, of B. of, from C. from, from D. of, of
6. If you run ____ two hares you will catch neither. A. into B. after C. off D. out of
7. This is a common mistake ____ students. A. between B. over C. among D. about
8. My father began to work ____ a bus driver when he was twenty years old.
A. for B. to C. at D. as
9. ____ hearing the news, I was wild ____ joy. A. At, in B. On, with C. After, by D. /, over
10. I don't think Xiao Li is ____ the other students ____ mathematics.
A. after, on B. after, with C. behind, in D. behind, at
11. Nobody knows it ____ me. A. except for B. except that C. besides D. but
12. The window is never opened ____ in summer. A. but B. except C. except for D. but for
13. It happened ____ the Long March. A. during B. in C. at D. for
14. We go to school ____ a bike. A. in B. on C. by D. over
15. It's very kind ____ you to repair the bike ____ me.
A. for, for B. of, of C. of, for D. for, of
16. Fresh air is good ____ your health. A. at B. for C. of D. to
17. The boy is waiting ____ his sister and they will go to the hospital to wait ____ their sick mother.
A. for, on B. on, for C. for, for D. on, on
18. The group is made up ____ five students. And they are studying hard to make up ____ the lost time.
A. of, of B. for, for C. of, for D. for, of
19. The PLA man saved the boy ____ death. A. of B. from C. to D. on
20. He will come ____ three days. A. before B. after C. in D. later
21. He went to Beijing and returned ____ three days.
A. in B. before C. later D. after
22. He will return ____ three o'clock. A. after B. in C. on D. at
23. He wrote the article ____ three days. A. at B. in C. on D. by
24. I agree ____ what you said. A. to B. on C. with D. at
25. Do you agree ____ this plan (arrangement)? A. at B. with C. on D. to
26. Finally they agreed ____ the terms of the contract. A. on B. to C. with D. at
27. Do you often hear ____ your brother? A. of B. from C. out of D. about

28. I heard ____ the book long ago, but I have never read it.
 A. out B. from C. of D. with
29. The plane flew ____ the city. A. across B. past C. through D. over
30. We walked ____ the Tian An Men Square to the Museum of Chinese History.
 A. across B. through C. by D. past
31. I was wandering ____ the streets when I caught sight of a tailor's shop.
 A. across B. through C. by D. past
32. Our bus drove ____ the Great Hall of the People.
 A. across B. through C. past D. over
33. ____ the sun, nothing would grow.
 A. For B. With C. Under D. Without
34. The teacher is busy ____ teaching.
 A. with B. for C. on D. of
35. The teacher is busy ____ correcting papers.
 A. for B. in C. on D. of
36. We left Xi' an ____ a very hot summer afternoon.
 A. on B. in C. during D. by
37. She felt disappointed when she found out they had gone swimming ____ her.
 A. but B. except C. except for D. without
38. His teacher was angry ____ him ____ his being late.
 A. at, with B. at, for C. with, for D. with, about
39. My father was disappointed ____ the news.
 A. by B. about C. at D. on
40. Mr Wang went to Nanjing ____ October, 1998 and came back home ____ the morning of Nov. 5.
 A. at; in B. on; at C. in; on D. by; from
41. My uncle lives ____ 105 Huanghe Street. His room is ____ the fifth floor.
 A. at; on B. to; at C. on; in D. of; to
42. I don't think you can work out the maths problem ____ the teacher's help.
 A. since B. unless C. because D. without
43. He is running ____ the wind towards the east of the station ____ Tom is running ____ the right.
 A. down; and; on B. against; while; on C. for; with; in D. with; while; to
44. In Hangzhou Mr Green was so struck ____ the beauty of nature that he stayed ____ another night.
 A. at; on B. with; at C. for; in D. by; for
45. Many people are still ____ the habit of writing silly things ____ public places.
 A. at; at B. in; in C. into; of D. during; at
46. - Do you go there ____ bus? - No, we go there ____ a train.
 A. in; on B. on; on C. by; in D. by; with
47. I made the coat ____ my own hands. It was made ____ hand, not with a machine.

- A. in; in B.in; with C. with; by D. with; with
48. The trees ____ front of the house are ____ the charge of Old Li.
A. in; in B. at; in C. in; by D. from; in
49. The old man died ____ cold ____ a cold night.
A. from; at B.of;in C.of;on D. for; during
50. Does John know any other foreign languages ____ French?
A. except B. but C. besides D. beside
51. He looked quite healthy ____ he was ____ the age of seventy.
A. when; at B. because; in C. if; for D. though; at
52. - How long has the bookshop been in business? - ____1982.
A. After B.In C.From D.Since
53. Did you have any trouble ____ the post office?
A. to have found B. with finding C. to find D. in finding
- 54.To tell you the truth, I have nothing to do ____ it.
A.about B.with C.for D.of
55. Something must be done to prevent our city ____ by thick smoke.
A. to be polluted B. from polluting C. from being polluted D. polluting
- 56.____ the students likes the paintings. Which is wrong?
A. The teacher as well as B. Nobody but C. The teacher besides D. All except
57. Henry,____ Mary and Tom, is coming to China for a visit. Which is wrong?
A. together with B. like C. and not D. but in addition to
58. Taiwan is ____ the east of Fujian.
A. in B.at C.to D.on
59. His father will be back from London ____ a few days.
A.since B.in C.on D.after
60. We offered him our congratulations ____ his passing the college entrance exams.
A.at B.on C.for D.of
- 61 .The word "write" has the same pronunciation ____ the word "right".
A. of B.as C.to D.from
62. The train leaves ____ 6: 00 p. m. So I have to be at the station ____ 5:40 p. m. at the latest.
A. at; until B. for; after C.at;by D. before; around
63. Go ____ the gate and you' ll find the entrance ____ the park ____ the other side.
A. through; to; on B. along ;of; on C. down; to; at D. up; of; by
64. One ____ five will have the chance to join in the game.
A. within B. among C. in D. from
65. Because of her devotion ____ music, she has become friendly with Mr. Zhang.
A. in B. to C. with D. on

66. What idea can a man who is blind from birth have _____ color?
A. in B. / C. with D. of
67. Some people say that we live _____ the age of computers.
A. in B. at C. with D. for
68. ---May I attend your lecture, Mr. Green? ---Welcome _____ open arms.
A. with B. by C. in D. for
69. _____ defeated, they didn't lose heart.
A. In spite of B. Except for C. Though D. Until
70. I saw Jack yesterday. He told me that he would stay here _____ the end of this year.
A. at B. by C. for D. till
71. The train leaves at 6:00 p.m. So I have to be at the station _____ 5:40 p.m. at the latest.
A. until B. after C. by D. around ('97NMET 11)
72. The boy ought to have gone to school _____, but he slept _____ noon.
A. in the morning, at B. that morning, at
C. in that morning, until D. that morning, until ('93 上海)
73. The doctor will be free _____.
A. 10 minutes later B. after ten minutes
C. in ten minutes D. 10 minutes after ('92MET. 20)
74. _____ most students, she was always well prepared and never came to class late.
A. Like B. As C. For D. To ('98上海高考题 2)
75. Let's walk over _____ the shop on the other side of the street.
A. in B. to C. under D. by ('93上海)
76. The number of the employees has grown from 1,000 to 1,200. This means it has risen _____ 20 percent.
A. by B. at C. to D. with ('99 上海高考)
77. _____ production up by 60%, the company has had another excellent year.
A. . As B. For C. With D. Through (2000NMET. 18)
78. Does John know any other foreign language _____ French?
A. except B. but C. besides D. beside ('89MET. 13)
79. I know nothing about the young lady _____ she is from Beijing.
A. except B. except for C. except that D. besides (2000 上海高考13)
80. ---You are so lucky. ---What do you mean _____ that? (2002年春招)
A. for B. in C. of D. by

语法复习十七：介词

1~5 ABCDA 6~10 BCDBC 11~15 DBABC 16~20 BACBC 21~25 DABCD
26~30 ABCDA 31~35 BCDAB 36~40 ADDCC 41~45 ADBDB 46~50 CCACC
51~55 DDDBC 56~60 DCCBB 61~65 BCACB 66~70 DAACD 71~75 CDCAB

76~80 ACCCD

语法复习十八：连 词

连词分为并列连词和从属连词两大类。并列连词是连接主语与主语，谓语与谓语，句子与句子，分词与分词的词，它要求前后两部分有相同的形式和语法作用；而从属连词一般连接主句与从句，从句形式有名词性从句，定语从句和状语从句等。

（一）并列连词：

并列连词可用来连接词与词，词组与词组，分句与分句。常用的并列连词有：and（和），as well as（既…又），both ... and（不但…而且），not only ... but also（不但…而且），not ... but（不是…而是），neither ... nor（既不…也不），either ... or（不是…就是），or（或者），but（但是），yet（然而），for（因为），so（所以），while（而），when（这时）等。如：Both my brother and my sister are teachers./ His room is bright but mine is gloomy（暗沉沉的）./ He can not only repair radios but also fix them./ It is a glorious（光荣的）yet difficult task./ Strike while iron is hot.

（二）从属连词

从属连词是指在复合句中引导从句的连结词。常见的从属连词有：

引导时间状语从句的：after, before, when, as, while, since, until, till, as soon as

引导原因状语从句的：because, since, as

引导让步状语从句的：although, though, no matter（无论）, even if (though)

引导条件状语从句的：if, unless, once, so (as) long as

引导结果状语从句的：so ... that ..., such ... that ...

引导目的状语从句的：so that ..., in order that ...

引导比较状语从句的：as ... as ..., not so (as) ... as ..., ... than ...

引导方式状语从句的：as if ...

引导主语，宾语或表语从句的连词主要有：that, whether, if 三个。其中 that 和 whether 间或还可以引起同位从句和状语从句。

（三）某些用法比较特殊的从属连词用法区别

1、当 **while, when, as** 引导时间状语从句时的区别：①while 引导的状语从句中动词必须是持续性。谓语动词多为进行时，或状态动词的一般时。while 的这些用法可用 when 代替，等于“at the time that”，“during the time that”。例如：Please keep quiet while (when) others are studying；②when 除可指一段时间外，还可用来指一点时间，等于“at the time”，也就是说 when 引出的时间状语从句中的谓语动词可以是终止性的，也可以延续性的。因此主句和从句的谓语可以是一般时，进行时，或完成时。例如：When I went into the lab, the teacher was doing an experiment.（when 不能换成 while）He often makes mistakes when he is speaking English.（when 可换成 while）③as 常可与 when, while 通用，但强调“一边、一边”。例如：As (when, while) I was walking down the street, I noticed a police car in front of number 37. ④when 引导的状语从句中的主语与主句主语一致，主、

谓是“主语+系动词”结构时，这时主语和系动词可以省略。例如：When (he was) young, he worked for a rich man./ She'll be here to give you help when (if it is) necessary. ⑤when 有时代替 if，引导条件句，意为“如果”、“假如”，例如：I'll come when (if) I'm free.

2、before 作连词一般表示时间，意为“在…之前”，但有些句子中这样译就显得别扭。试看以下句子的翻译：He almost knocked me down before he saw me.他几乎把我撞倒才看见我；Before I could get in a word he had measured me.我还没来得及插话，他已经给我量好了尺寸。

3、till, until 作为介词式从属连词引导时间状语短语或状语从句，用于否定句时，结构为 not ...until (till)，主句谓语动词延续与非延续皆可，意为“直到…才…”。用于肯定句时，只与延续性动词连用，表示“到…为止”。例如：They played volleyball until (till) it got dark./ They didn't talk (延续性动词) until (till) the interpreter (译员) came./ He didn't go to bed (非延续性动词) until (till) his father came back.; until 可以放在句首，till 则不行，例如：Until the last minute of the match we kept on playing./ Not until he finished his work did he go home. (倒装)；till, until 只用于时间，以下句子是错误的：We walked till the edge of the forest. (要用 as far as 或 to)。

4、because, since, as 引导原因状语时注意使用上的区别：①如果原因构成句子的最主要部分，一般用 because，因此 because 引导的从句往往放在句末。用 why 提问的句子，一定用 because 回答。例如：He had to stay at home yesterday because he was ill.; ②如原因已为人们所知，或不如句子的其他部分重要，就用 as，或 since。since 比 as 更正式些。as 和 since 引导的从句一般放在句子的开头。例如：As you are tired, you had better rest./ Since everyone is here, now let's begin.

5、although 和 though 引导让步状语从句往往用法一样，但注意以下区别：①although 用于各种文体，而 though 则多用于非正式的口语或书面语中。注意由 although, though 引导的从句后，主句不能用 but，但可用副词 yet, still。例如：Although/ Though it rained all the morning, they still went on working. (或 yet they went on working) ②though 常与 even 连用，even though 表示强调，意为“即使”，但不能说 even although，例如：Even though I didn't understand a word, I kept smiling. ③though 可用作副词，意为“然而”，常用逗号与句子分开。although 则不能这样使用，它只作连词。例如：It was a quiet party, I had a good time, though.

6、once 作副词译“曾经”，作为连词译“一旦”，引导条件状语从句。相当于 if 的加强形式。例如：I don't believe he was once a thief. (once 这里是副词)/ Once Aristotle had made up his mind that heavy objects always fell faster than light objects, he taught it as a truth to his students. (once 连词)

7、unless 引导条件状语从句等于 if ... not ...。例如：He'll accept the job unless the salary is too low. (= He'll accept the job if the salary is not too low.)

8、在用 as if 引导的方式状语从句及表语从句中，根据情况要使用虚拟语气。例如：He talks as if he knew all about it. 但有时也可用直陈语气。例如：It looks as if it is going to rain.

9、whether, if 引导从句的用法区别：①引导主语从句、表语从句或同位语从句时，用 whether，不用 if。例如：Whether they will go to the Great Wall is not known./ The question is whether we can

finish the task on time./ The question whether we will take part in the physics contest has not been decided. ②whether 可接不定式，而 if 则不可。例如：I haven't decided whether to leave or not. ③whether 可作介词的宾语或置于句首表示强调，而 if 则不可。例如：Everything depends on whether we have enough money./ Whether he will come, I am not sure. ④whether 和 if 均可引导宾语从句，whether 引导的宾语从句一般都是肯定句，if 引导的宾语从句可以是肯定的，也可以是否定的（此时不能用 whether），例如：Could you tell us whether/ if it rains in winter in Australia?/ I wonder if it doesn't rain. ⑤引导宾语从句的 whether 和 if 常可与 or not 连用。连用时要注意 or not 的位置，它一般与 whether、if 分开使用，有时它可与 whether 合起来使用，但不能与 if 合起来使用。例如：I don't know whether/ if they will come or not./ I don't know whether or not they will come. ⑥if 可用来引导条件状语从句，译“如果”，whether 则不行。例如：If you work hard, you are sure to succeed.

10、as 作从属连词可引导多种状语从句。①as 引导时间状语从句，意为“当…时”。例如：As (he was) a young man, he was a storekeeper and later a postmaster./ He sang as he worked. ②as 引导方式状语从句，意为“象…一样”。例如：We must do as the Party teaches us. ③as 引导原因状语从句。意为“由于”，例如：As you are tired, you had better rest. ④as 引导让步状语从句。意为“虽然”、“尽管” Child as he is, he can do it well. (= Although he is a child, he can do it well.)

另外，as 做为关系代词还可以引导定语从句，如：I have the same book as you.

练习、连词

1. He is very old, ____ he still works very hard. A. but B. if C. when D. as
2. ____ you are dismissed.
A. Neither you go nor B. Either you go or C. Whether you go or D. Both you go and
3. They had camped once before, ____ they knew what to take.
A. because B. now C. so D. since
4. Why these things happened was ____ the driver had been careless.
A. because of B. owing to C. due to D. that
5. Although, it's raining, ____ are still working in the fields.
A. they B. but they C. and they D. so they
6. ____ we have satisfied you, you have no grounds of complaint.
A. So B. Since that C. Now that D. By now.
7. Write clearly ____ your teacher can understand .you correctly.
A. since B. for C. because D. so that
8. You'll miss the train ____ you hurry up. A. unless B. as C. if D. until
9. Francis did the task ____ his brother. A. as good as B. as better as C. as well as D. as best as
10. The size of the audience, ____ we had expected, was well over twenty thousand.

- A. as B. what C. that D. whom
11. I thought he hated the TV .You are right,_____ he still watches the program.
- A. yet B. besides C. also D. then
12. It looks _____ it's going to rain. A. that B. as C. as if D. like that
13. _____ to New York, her father has not heard from her.
- A. Because she went B. After she went C. When she went D. Since she went
14. _____ he daydreamed, Peter saw figures in the sky. A. Until B. Since C. While D. During
15. We arrived at the station _____ the train had left. A. after B. before C. since D. when
16. _____ he was in poor health, he worked just as hard as everyone else.
- A. But B. Although C. Even if D. If
17. Give me one more minute _____ I'll have finished. A. so B. until C. and D. when
18. The worker hunted for jobs in New York for months, _____ he could not find any work.
- A. and B. yet C. or D. and but
19. Hurry up, _____ you'll be late. A. or B. and C. so D. yet
20. Do not make the same mistake _____ I did. A. so B. as C. like D. that
21. My sister is expecting me, _____ I must be off now. A. however B. or C. so D. otherwise
22. We should pay attention _____ to industry _____ to agriculture.
- A. either, or B. neither, nor C. not, but D. both, and
23. He ran off _____ I could stop him. A. before B. after C. since D. when
24. _____ you told me, I had heard nothing of what happened. A. Till B. Until C. After D. Since
25. Where have you been _____ you left home? A. before B. as C. since D. when
26. _____ the problem of method is solved, talking about the task is useless.
- A. Until B. Since C. After D. Unless
27. We have produced 15% more cotton this year _____ we did last year.
- A. as B. than C. like D. white
28. It is late; _____, I'm too tired to go out. A. besides B. except C. except for D. except that
29. Everything around us is _____ solid ..liquid _____ gas.
- A. not ..but... B. either.. .or... C. neither.. .nor... D. whether.. .or...
30. He will come _____ you ask him. A. whether B. unless C. if D. while
31. _____ he will come or not is still unknown. A. If B. Where C. That D. Whether
32. I don' t know _____ to stay at home or go out. A. whether B. if C. how D. where
33. He spoke loudly _____ the audience could hear him clearly.
- A. so B. that C. so that D. in order to
34. The book is not easy. _____ it's rather difficult.

- A. On the one hand B. On the contrary
C. On the other hand D. On the other contrary
35. You must work hard,_____ you will not learn English well.
A. if B. whether C. otherwise D. unless
36. It rained heavily,_____ the basketball match had to be put off.
A. so that B. when C. otherwise D. therefore
37. We must do _____ the people want us to do..
A. whatever B. however C. wherever D. whenever
38. You are certainly right,_____ others may say. A. what B. whatever C. that D. as
- 39._____ makes mistakes must correct them. A. Who B. What C. Whoever D. Whatever
- 40.I'll discuss it with you _____ you like to come.
A. when B. where C. whoever D. whenever
- 41._____ you work, you must always serve the people heart and soul.
A. Wherever B. Whenever C. Where D. When
- 42.____you understand this rule, you will have no further difficulty.
A. Once B. At once C. Only D. Only then
- 43._____ difficult the task may be, we must fulfil it this month.
A. No matter how B. No matter what C. No matter when D. No matter where
44. We can surely overcome these difficulties __,_____ we are closely united.
A. so far as B. so long as C. as soon as D. as well as
- 45._____ I know he will stay here for half a year.
A. as soon as B. as long as C. so far as D. as well as
46. Please write me _____ you arrive in New York.
A. as well as B. so long as C. as far as D. as soon as
47. That is not _____ I want. A. that B. why C. what D. whose
48. ____ he did it remains a secret. A. What B. Whom C. Which D. How
49. It is quite clear _____ he won't see us. A. what B. that C. why D. how
50. Would you tell me _____ way I should take? A. what B. that C. which D. whose
51. I am sure _____ you said is true. A. what B. that C. which D. who
52. The trouble is _____ we can not find such an expert.
A. why B. that C. where D. /
53. It has not been decided _____ they will leave.
A. why B. when C. which D. what
54. We shall go _____ you are ready. A. while B. as soon as C. as D. since

55. He will tell you about it ____ you get there. A. while B. as C. when D. /
56. Don't try to get off the bus ____ it has stopped.
A. while B. as C. since D. before
57. I'll come and see you _____ I go to the countryside.
A. while B. when C. as soon as D. before
58. ____ he came to study in the university, he has made much progress in the study of English.
A. While B. When C. Since D. After
59. Things have changed a lot ____ I wrote to you last time.
A. when B. since C. as D. before
60. I can't use your pen, ____ there is no ink in it. A. for B. when C. if D. whether
61. I'd like to go swimming ____ the water is not too cold.
A. for B. unless C. if D. whether
62. Difficulties are nothing ____ we are not afraid of them.
A. for B. as C. if D. whether
63. The doctor will not perform the operation ____ it is absolutely necessary.
A. when B. if C. for D. unless
64. Go back ____ you came from. A. until B. where C. which D. when
65. He lay ____ the grass was the thickest. A. where B. when C. that D. after
66. You will find friendly people ____ you go in China.
A. where B. and C. wherever D. so
67. ____ it was already dark, they went on working in the fields.
A. If B. Whether C. But D. Though
68. ____ he has finished writing the novel is unknown.
A. If B. Whether C. When D. While
69. We'll go and see the patient ____ we are busy.
A. even if B. for C. if D. while
70. The museum is ____ far ____ it will take us half an hour to get there by bus.
A. such... that B. as...as C. so...that D. so ... as

连 词

1~5 ABCDA 6~10 CDACA 11~15 ACDBA 16~20 BCBAB 21~25 CDABC

26~30 BBABC 31~35 DACBC 36~40 AABCD 41~45 AAABC 46~50 DCDBC

51~55 ABBBC 56~60 DDCBA 61~65 CCDBA 66~70 CDBAC

语法复习十九：冠 词

(一) 考纲要求

考纲规定，冠词考查基本用法，包括定冠词与不定冠词，不定冠词 a 与 an 的区别；不用冠词的情况；习语中的冠词；特指与泛指等。

(二) 命题导向

冠词规则的灵活运用是高考命题的一个热点，几乎每年高考题的单项选择或完形填空都有涉及冠词的题目，不定冠词和定冠词的一些特殊用法，习惯用法及不用冠词的情况是高考重点考查的知识点。

(三) 基本用法

当代语法把冠词分为不定冠词、定冠词和零冠词（即不用冠词）三种。冠词是一种虚词，起限定作用，是最主要最典型的限定词，放在名词（或名词化的形容词分词）前面，说明其所指的人或物。

1、定冠词的基本用法：

- ① 表示上文提到过的人或事物。如：I have bought a book. **The** book is very useful.
- ② 用于说话人与听话人心中都有数的人或事物。如：Close **the** window, please.
- ③ 用于表示世界上独一无二的事物前。如：the sun, the moon, the earth, the world 等。
- ④ 用于表示方位的名词之前。如：the east, the right.
- ⑤ 用于序数词或形容词的最高级之前。如：the first, the tallest.
- ⑥ 用于形容词之前，使其名词化。如：the sick, the wounded.
- ⑦ 用于由普通名词构成的专有名词之前。如：the United States, the United Nation.
- ⑧ 用于江河、海洋、海峡、山脉、群岛、建筑物等的名词之前。如：the Changjiang River, the East Lake.
- ⑨ 用于复数姓氏之前，表示“夫妇”或“全家”。如：The Smiths
- ⑩ 用于乐器的名词前。如：play **the** piano; play **the** violin.
- ⑪ 发明物。如：The compass was invented in China.
- ⑫ 年代名词前。如：He lived in the countryside in the 1970s.
- ⑬ 固定词组中。如：in the morning(afternoon, evening), on the other hand, at the same time

2、不定冠词的基本用法：

- ① 泛指一个。如：There is **a** book on the table.
- ② 指人或事物的某一种类。如：His father is **a** driver. Longjing is **a** wonderful tea.
- ③ 指某一个人或事物，但不具体说明。如：My sister was saved by **a** PLA man in the fire.
- ④ 用于某一些表示重量、长度、时间等单位前，表示“每一”。如：We have meals three times a day. (我们一天吃三餐。)
- ⑤ 表示同样的。如：They are of **an** age. (他们是同岁。)
- ⑥ 表数量，相当于 one, 但语意较弱。如：There is **a** pen and two books on the desk.
- ⑦ 使抽象名词具体化。如：The little girl is **a** help to her mother. (a hand 译“帮手”)
- ⑧ 固定搭配。如：as **a** matter of fact, in **a** hurry, in **a** word

3、不用冠词的情况：

- ① 表示总称的复数名词之前。如：Children love **cartoons**. (儿童喜欢卡通影片。)
- ② 不含普通名词的专有名词前。如：We are studying **English**.
- ③ 名词前有指示代词、物主代词、不定代词或名词所有格修饰时。如：I like **this picture**; I do not have **any money**; As time went on, **Einstein's theory** proved to be correct.
- ④ 季节、月份、星期等名词前，一般不用冠词。如：She likes **spring** most.
- ⑤ 呼语前不用冠词。如：What shall I do next, **Mother**?
- ⑥ 三餐饭前不用冠词。如：What did you have for **lunch**?
- ⑦ 节假日前不用冠词。如：People give gifts to each other on **Christmas Day**.
- ⑧ 球类和棋类运动的名称前不用冠词。如：She is fond of playing **basketball**.
- ⑨ 在一些成对出现的短语中不用冠词。如：arm in arm (手挽手); hand in hand (手牵手); side by side (肩对肩); day and day (日日夜夜); young and old (老老少少); from door to door (挨门挨户); from beginning to end (从头到尾); from morning till night (从早到晚) 等。

练习 (一)、冠 词

1. In America, ____ car is ____ popular means of transportation (交通设施) .
A. the, the B. a, the C. the, / D. the, a
2. ---- What happened? ---- They left in such ____ hurry that they forgot to lock ____ door.
A. a, a B. a, the C. /, the D. /, a
3. There were two small rooms in the house, ____ smaller of which served as ____ kitchen.
A. a, the B. the, a C. the, the D. a, a
4. I ordered ____ book some time ago. ____ book has arrived.
A. a, The B. the, A C. a, A D. /, The
5. Mr Smith is ____ European and his wife is ____ American.
A. an, an B. a, a C. a, an D. an, a
6. Lesson 10 is ____ most difficult lesson, but it isn't ____ most difficult lesson in Book One.
A. a, a B. a, the C. the, the D. the, a
7. My sister works in a factory. She goes home once ____ month. A. a B. an C. the D. every
8. He was absent because he had caught ____.
A. heavy a cold B. the heavy cold C. a heavy cold D. heavy cold
9. ____ water is ____ liquid. A. The, a B. A, a C. /, / D. /, a
10. In winter ____ people often hang up wet clothes near ____ fire.
A. /, / B. a, a C. /, a D. the, a
11. He has tried twice, and the captain asks him to have ____ third try.
A. a B. the C. another D. other
12. He was a top student in the class, he often got ____ in English.
A. first B. a first C. second D. the second
13. ____ horse is ____ useful animal. A. The, the B. The, a C. The, an D. /, a
14. Tom left Shanghai in ____.
A. the summer 1995 B. summer 1995 C. 1995 the summer D. the summer of 1995
15. ____ children here live ____ most happy life. A. The, the B. The, a C. The, / D. /, the
16. The soldier died during ____ World War I. A. the B. the first C. / D. a
17. In ____ Marx began to learn Russian.
A. a 1870 B. 1870s C. the year of 1870 D. the 1870s
18. Alice is ____ of the two girls. A. taller B. the tall C. more tall D. the taller
19. ---- Can your sister play ____? ---- No, but she can play ____.
A. the tennis, the piano B. tennis, piano C. the tennis, piano D. tennis, the piano
20. The introduction is always in ____ of a book.
A. front B. the front C. a front D. instead
21. She touched her daughter gently ____ shoulder.
A. in her B. on her C. in the D. on the
22. Both ____ wounded and ____ sick were sent to safety.
A. /, / B. the, the C. /, the D. the, /
23. ____ doctors and ____ nurses should care for their patients.
A. The, the B. /, / C. The, / D. /, the
24. Tell us the story as ____ Mother told you. A. a B. the C. an D. /
25. Do you know how long ____ has lived on the earth?
A. man B. the man C. a man D. men
26. The man was once thrown into ____ prison for robbing the bank. A. a B. an C. the D. /
27. ____ Mount Tai is in the east of China. A. A B. The C. / D. That
28. I like ____ history. I am studying ____ history of China.
A. the, / B. /, the C. a, / D. /, a
29. He wrote a letter ____ pencil. A. with B. in C. in a D. use a
30. On October 1, the Chinese people celebrated ____ with new achievements and victories.
A. National Day B. the National Day C. our National Day D. a National Day

练习 (二)、冠 词

1. ---You mean you know the man? ---I know _____ man exactly like him.
A. other B. the C. / D. a
2. Wouldn't it be _____ wonderful world if all nations live in _____ peace with one another?
A. a, / B. the, / C. a, the D. the, the
3. ---I hear that as many as 1,500 people were killed in the earthquake.
---Yes, _____ news came as _____ shock to us.
A. a, a B. the, a C. /, / D. /, a
4. At midnight they reached _____ small village _____ east of _____ Everwhite Mountain.
A. a, /, the B. a, /, / C. the, the, the D. the, an, an
5. Nanjing lies on _____ Changjiang River and has _____ population of more than four million.
A. the, the B. the, / C. the, a D. /, a
6. Bill Clinton took _____ office on January 20th, 1993 and left _____ office on January 20th, 2001.
A. /, / B. his, his C. the, the D. an, his
7. We learn to go all out to work for _____ good of _____ society.
A. the, / B. /, / C. /, a D. the, the
8. Paris is _____ most beautiful city, where you can see _____ famous Eiffel Tower.
A. a, the B. a, / C. the, a D. the, the
9. ---What about _____ bike? ---Do you think it all right to buy him _____ bike as _____ birthday present?
A. the, the, the B. a, the, a C. the, a, the D. the, the, a
10. He had decided to give it up, but on _____ second thoughts he decided to try _____ third time.
A. the, a B. /, / C. a, a D. /, a
11. Towards _____ morning, _____ heavy rain began to fall.
A. the, a B. a, a C. the, / D. the, /
12. ---Excuse me, where are _____ books for biology?
---Follow me. They're on this shelf. Do you want _____ new or used book?
A. a, a B. a, the C. the, a D. the, the
13. Young as he is, David has gained _____ rich experience in _____ society.
A. /, / B. the, the C. a, / D. /, the
14. ---My son is lost. Did you see a boy passing by?
---I saw _____ boy hidden behind _____ tree over there. You may go and have a look.
A. a, a B. the, the C. a, the D. the, a
15. Mary climbed to the top of the mountain in _____ hurry, looked down and found in _____ surprise that _____ whole town took on a new look.
A. a, the, the B. a, /, the C. /, /, the D. /, /, a
16. In _____ old society many young women died by so curious and cruel _____ custom.
A. an, a B. /, the C. the, a D. the, /
17. ---You're sure to help me find _____ bed for my new house?
---Sure, but not now. I'm heading for _____ bed and a good sleep.
A. a, a B. the, a C. a, / D. the, /
18. The wheel is thought to be _____ first invention of _____ transportation.
A. the, the B. a, a C. a, / D. the, /
19. Some people say that _____ British are _____ funny people.
A. the, a B. /, the C. /, / D. the, /
20. Don't worry about _____ mistakes. They're _____ natural part of learning.
A. /, a B. the, / C. /, the D. the, the
21. ---Selma looks especially pretty tonight. ---Yes, she always looks her best in _____ of that kind.
A. the dress B. a dress C. dress D. the dresses
22. --- _____ did you think of the exhibition? ---Oh, it was _____ success.
A. How, really a B. What, great C. How, / D. What, quite a
23. The child had only _____ slight temperature, but the doctor regarded _____ illness as serious

enough for ____ hospital treatment.

- A. /, the B. a, / C. a, the, / D. /, the, the
24. ---Did you have ____ wonderful time yesterday? ---Yes. I was on ____ top of ____ world.
A. /, the, a B. a, /, the C. a, a, the D. a, the, the
25. I don't usually have ____ breakfast, but I always eat ____ good lunch.
A. /, / B. /, a C. the, / D. /, the
26. ---I hear there'll be ____ talk on English study tomorrow morning.
---Do you mean ____ speech our teacher asked us to listen to?
A. a, the B. the, a C. the, the D. a, a
27. Mr. Stock runs ____ small business, who is in ____ Mexico on business.
A. a, a B. /, / C. a, the D. a, /
28. Although ____ motor car has been with us for almost a century, I have never been able to drive ____ American one.
A. a, the B. a, / C. the, an D. the, the
29. Xi'an was ____ starting point of ____ world-famous Silk Road.
A. /, / B. a, a C. the, / D. the, the
30. ---What does "on ____ one hand...on ____ other" means?
---What ____ great fun! You're asking me such a simple question.
A. the, the, / B. the, the, a C. /, the, a D. /, the, /
31. Alexander Gramha Bell invented ____ telephone in 1876. (MET1991)
A. /; B. a C. the D. one
32. After watching ____ TV, she played ____ violin for an hour.
A. /; / B. the ; the C. the; / D. /; the (MET1991 11)
33. ---Where's jack ? ---I think he's still ____ in bed, but he might just be in ____ bathroom.
A. /; / B. the; the C. the; / D. /; the (MET1992 36)
34. Many people are still in ____ habit of writing silly things in ____ public places.
A. the ; the B. /; / C. the; / D. /; the (MET 1993 19)
35. She is ____ newcomer to ____ chemistry but she has already made some important discoveries.
A. the; the B. the ; / C. a; / D. a ; the (NMET1994 20)
36. Wouldn't it be ____ wonderful world if all nations lived in ____ peace with one another?
A. a; / B. the; / C. a; the D. the; the (NMET1994 23)
37. Many people agree that ____ knowledge of English is a must in ____ international trade today.
A. a; / B. the; an C. the; the D. /; the (NMET 1996 13)
38. Paper money was in ____ use in China when Marco Polo visited the country in ____ thirteenth century.
A. the ; / B. the; the C. /; the D. /; / (NMET 1999 8)
39. It is not true in ____ that people in ____ fifties are going to university for further education .
A. 90s; their B. the 90s; / C. 90s; / D. the 90s; their (1999.上海 6)
40. Most animals have little connection with ____ animals of ____ different kind unless they kill them for food.
A. the; a B. /; a C. the ; the D. /; the (NMET2000 10)
41. ---Have you seen ____ pen ? I left it here this morning.
---Is it ____ black one ? I think I saw it somewhere. (NMET1997 7)
A. a; the B. the; the C. the ; a D. a; a
42. Summers in ____ south of France are for ____ most part dry and sunny.
A. /; a B. the; / C. /; / D. the ; the (2000.春招 8)
43. I don't like talking on ____ telephone; I prefer writing ____ letters. (2002 春招 26)
A. a; the B. the ; 不填 C. the; the D. was killing
44. Jumping out of ____ airplane at ten thousand feet is quite ____ exciting experience. (NMET 2002, 26)
A. /; the B. /; an C. an; an D. the; the
45. ---I don't like ____ New York at all. ---But this isn't ____ New York you remember.
A. the, the B. /, the C. the, / D. /, a

冠 词

练习一、1~5 DBBAC 6~10 BACDC 11~15 ABBDB 16~20 CDDDB 21~25 DBBDA
26~30 DCBBA

练习二、1~5 DABAC 6~10 AAADD 11~15 ACACB 16~20 CCDA A 21~25 BDCBB
26~30 ADCDD 31~35 CDDCC 36~40 AACDB 41~45 DDBCB